

Veeam Backup for Salesforce

Version 3

User Guide

December, 2024

© 2024 Veeam Software.

All rights reserved. All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form by any means, without written permission from Veeam Software (Veeam). The information contained in this document represents the current view of Veeam on the issue discussed as of the date of publication and is subject to change without notice. Veeam shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein. Veeam makes no warranties, express or implied, in this document. Veeam may have patents, patent applications, trademark, copyright, or other intellectual property rights covering the subject matter of this document. All other trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners. Except as expressly provided in any written license agreement from Veeam, the furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property.

NOTE

Read the End User Software License Agreement before using the accompanying software programs. Using any part of the software indicates that you accept the terms of the End User Software License Agreement.

Contents

CONTACTING VEEAM SOFTWARE	7
OVERVIEW	8
Solution Architecture	.9
Data Backup	11
How Backup Works	12
Backup Retention	13
Data Encryption	14
Data Restore	15
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Restores Object Hierarchy	16
PLANNING AND PREPARATION	17
System Requirements	18
Ports	21
Permissions	22
Considerations and Limitations	25
Sizing and Scalability Guidelines	27
PostgreSQL	28
Log Storage	30
File Storage	31
LICENSING	32
Installing and Removing License	34
Viewing License Information	36
DEPLOYMENT	37
Installing Veeam Backup for Salesforce on RedHat, AlmaLinux, Rocky and Oracle Machines	38
Installing Veeam Backup for Salesforce on Ubuntu Machines	42
Performing Initial Configuration	46
Step 1. Accept License Agreement	47
Step 2. Create Local Administrator	48
Step 3. Connect to PosgreSQL	49
Step 4. Provide License File	53
Step 5. Create Connected App	54
Step 6. Connect to Salesforce	56
Step 7. Set Backup Policy Schedule	58
Step 8. Finish Working with Wizard	59
ACCESSING VEEAM BACKUP FOR SALESFORCE	60
CONFIGURING VEEAM BACKUP FOR SALESFORCE	61
Managing Salesforce Organizations	62
Adding Organizations	63

	Editing Organizations	64
	Removing Organizations	
	Managing Companies	
	Adding Companies	70
	Editing Companies	71
	Removing Companies	
	Managing Databases	74
	Adding Database Connections	
	Editing Database Connections	
	Removing Database Connections	
	Managing Users	79
	User Roles and Permissions	
	Adding Users	
	Editing Users	
	Removing Users	
	Managing Data Masking Templates	
	Adding Data Masking Templates	
	Editing Data Masking Templates	91
	Removing Data Masking Templates	
	Configuring Security Settings	
	Changing Connected App Tokens	
	Configuring IdP and SSO Settings	
	Configuring Encryption Settings	
	Managing AWS KMS Connections	
	Managing Encryption Keys	
	Viewing Audit Trail	
	Managing Alerts	
	Configuring Notification Settings	
	Creating Alerts	
	Editing Alerts	111
	Configuring Advanced Settings	112
PERF	ORMING SALESFORCE BACKUP	115
	Creating Backup Policies	116
	Step 1. Launch Add Backup Policy Wizard	117
	Step 2. Configure Connection to Salesforce Organization	118
	Step 3. Configure Backup Settings	
	Step 4. Enable Backup of Files and Attachments	
	Step 5. Configure Encryption Settings	
	Step 6. Configure Retention Settings	
	Step 7. Finish Working with Wizard	

Starting and Stopping Backup Policies	
Disabling and Enabling Backup Policies	
Editing Backup Policies	134
Reloading Fields and Files	136
Reloading Metadata	
Removing Backup Policies	138
Viewing Backup Policy Details	139
Viewing Backup Policy Sessions	
VIEWING BACKED-UP DATA	143
PERFORMING SALESFORCE RESTORE	
Creating Restore Jobs	147
Restoring Records	148
Restoring Field Values	162
Restoring Files	174
Restoring Metadata	
Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs	
Cloning Restore Jobs	190
Editing Restore Jobs	191
Removing Restore Job Drafts	
Configuring Restore Mapping Settings	194
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	196
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore Viewing Restore Job Details	196 197
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore Viewing Restore Job Details Viewing Restore Sessions	196 197 198
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	
How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore	

	Upgrading Veeam Backup for Salesforce	220
	Checking for Updates	. 221
	Installing Updates	.222
	Viewing Updates History	224
GETTI	NG TECHNICAL SUPPORT	225
APPEN	NDICES	227
	Appendix A. Unsupported Objects	228
	Appendix B. Replacing Security Certificate	229

Contacting Veeam Software

At Veeam Software we value feedback from our customers. It is important not only to help you quickly with your technical issues, but it is our mission to listen to your input and build products that incorporate your suggestions.

Customer Support

Should you have a technical concern, suggestion or question, visit the Veeam Customer Support Portal to open a case, search our knowledge base, reference documentation, manage your license or obtain the latest product release.

Company Contacts

For the most up-to-date information about company contacts and office locations, visit the Veeam Contacts Webpage.

Online Support

If you have any questions about Veeam products, you can use the following resources:

- Full documentation set: veeam.com/documentation-guides-datasheets.html
- Veeam R&D Forums: forums.veeam.com

Overview

Veeam Backup for Salesforce is a solution developed for data and metadata protection for the Salesforce SaaS platform. With Veeam Backup for Salesforce, you can do the following:

- Run your backup environment anywhere: on-premises, in AWS, Microsoft Azure and so on.
- Protect multiple Salesforce organizations with one installation.
- Back up Salesforce files, data and metadata.
- Encrypt data on the client side with original (built-in) or AWS KMS keys.
- Configure flexible backup schedules for different Salesforce objects to meet the desired RPOs.
- Create high-frequency, near-continuous backups of specific objects.
- Restore files, data and metadata including object hierarchies and custom fields.
- Restore files, fields, records and objects of entire Salesforce organizations.
- Restore data and metadata (including Reports, Profiles, Permission sets, Flows and so on).
- Restore object hierarchy to an unlimited level of depth.
- Restore child and parent relationships.
- Archive data that is no longer needed but must be retained for future reference or regulatory compliance reasons.
- Configure granular retention settings at the object level.
- Compare versions of production Salesforce records with versions of backed-up records stored in repositories.
- Compare versions of production Salesforce metadata with versions of backed-up metadata stored in repositories to see line-by-line differences.
- Create real-time alerts for backup, recovery, licensing and connection issues, as well as for any changes in protected data.
- Use Microsoft Entra ID or Salesforce as a single sign-on (SSO) provider to log in the product Web UI.
- Leverage role-based access control (RBAC) if connected using an SSO provider.

Solution Architecture

The Veeam Backup for Salesforce architecture includes the following components:

- Management server
- PostgreSQL server
- File repositories
- Log repository
- Salesforce organizations



Management Server

The management server is a Linux-based host where Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed. The management server performs the following administrative activities:

- Manages infrastructure components.
- Coordinates backup and restore jobs.
- Controls backup policy execution.
- Generates alert notifications that can be sent by email and to specific Slack channels and chats.

Management Server Components

The management server uses the following components:

- Management server (vbsf-backend) manages data backup, restore and archival operations. It also provides a web interface (Web UI) that allows a user to access the Veeam Backup for Salesforce functionality.
- **Configuration database** stores application configuration, connection details to Salesforce organizations, backup policies, restore jobs, sessions and so on. This database is created during initial configuration of Veeam Backup for Salesforce.
- Veeam Updater (veeam-updater) allows Veeam Backup for Salesforce to check, view and install product and package updates.

PostgreSQL Server

To store data and backups of protected Salesforce organizations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses PostgreSQL databases. Each protected organization must have a dedicated database. Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates at least 2 database schemas and saves organization data and metadata to the database specified in the backup policy settings. For more information on databases, see Managing Databases.

One additional database – configuration database – is required to store Veeam Backup for Salesforce configuration. It is possible to combine application configuration schema and Salesforce backup schemas in one database, although it is not recommended for portability reasons.

File Repositories

To store backups of Salesforce files and metadata, Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates a file repository per each protected Salesforce organization on the management server in the following folder: /opt/vbsf/data. The name of each file repository contains the path to the folder and organization ID. It is recommended that you create a dedicated partition for the file storage and mount it to the specified directory to prevent any disk capacity issues on the management server. For more information on the required disk capacity, see System Requirements.

Log Repository

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce stores its logs in the following folder: /var/log/vbsf/. It is recommended that you create a dedicated partition for the log repository and mount it to the specified directory to prevent any disk capacity issues on the management server. For more information on the required disk capacity, see System Requirements.

Salesforce Organizations

To protect a Salesforce organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses the native Salesforce API. To allow integration between the product and Salesforce, the Administrator of the protected organization (a Standard User with specific permissions) creates a Connected App and uses the Administrator account to authorize access to Salesforce data.

To enable access to the product functionality with the help of user roles and scopes, the Administrator configures single sign-on (SSO) authentication with a Microsoft Azure or Salesforce identity provider and adds new users to the product.

Data Backup

To back up data of Salesforce organizations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs backup policies. A backup policy is a collection of settings that define the way backup operations are performed: what data to back up, where to store backups, when to start the backup process, and so on. Note that each Salesforce organization can be protected by only one backup policy in one Veeam Backup for Salesforce installation.

When creating a backup policy, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to do the following:

- Back up Salesforce object data and metadata. For the full list of Salesforce metadata that can be backed up, see Salesforce Documentation.
- Back up files associated with Salesforce objects.
- Back up documents, including *ContentDocument*, *FeedAttachment* and *QuoteDocument* objects. Chatter objects are also supported.
- Exclude specific objects and fields from the backup scope.
- Automatically protect new objects and fields.
- Apply different schedules to launch separate backup sessions for different groups of objects.
- Configure retention policies to remove backed-up data that is older than a specific retention period.
- Encrypt record fields and files at rest.

How to Protect Salesforce Organizations

To create a backup policy, complete the following steps:

- 1. Check considerations and limitations.
- 2. Add a Salesforce organization.
- 3. Connect a database that will be used to store backed-up data.
- 4. Complete the Add Backup Policy wizard.

How Backup Works

Veeam Backup for Salesforce can perform 2 types of backup:

- Initial this type of backup is performed during the first backup session. Veeam Backup for Salesforce copies all records, files and metadata and creates a backup in the standard file repository. The initial backup becomes a starting point in the incremental backup.
- Incremental this type of backup is performed during subsequent backup sessions. Veeam Backup for Salesforce copies only those records, files and metadata that have changed since the previous backup session, and stores these data blocks to incremental backups in the standard file repository. The content of each incremental backup depends on the content of the initial backup and the preceding incremental backups in the regular backup chain.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce performs an incremental backup in the following way:

1. The product checks whether new objects (records, fields, files and metadata) have been added to Salesforce and creates metadata, file and data jobs to process each new item. For more information on types of jobs, see Backup Job Types.

Note that if you have cleared the **Automatically add new objects** and **Automatically add new fields on objects** check boxes when configuring the backup policy, the product will not add new items to the backup scope.

2. Veeam Backup for Salesforce processes all items in parallel comparing backed -up data in the product database with data currently stored in Salesforce. If the product detects an object whose value in the latest version of the backed -up object is different from the value in Salesforce, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will back up the data creating a new restore point for the object. Otherwise, the object will be skipped from processing.

NOTE

If a backup job does not respond for more than 24 hours (no data is uploaded), the job is terminated automatically.

Backup Retention

Veeam Backup for Salesforce retains record restore points for the number of days defined in retention scheduling settings as described in section Creating Backup Policies.

During every successful backup policy session, Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates a new restore point that allows you to roll back to a specific point in time. If Veeam Backup for Salesforce detects that a restore point is older than the specified retention period, the product removes it from the product database.

IMPORTANT

When Veeam Backup for Salesforce deletes a record, all its associated attachments are deleted as well – but only if the following requirements are met:

- The attachments no longer exist in Salesforce.
- The attachments have backups.
- The attachments are older than the specified retention period.

Data Encryption

For enhanced data security, Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to encrypt backed -up data (fields and files) stored in PostgreSQL databases and file repositories using an organization-specific data key that is enciphered with one of the following master keys:

• An original (built-in) Veeam Backup for Salesforce master encryption key that is automatically generated by Veeam Backup for Salesforce upon installation.

Note that in case you plan to migrate the product to another workstation, you must save the built-in data encryption key to your local machine in advance. Otherwise, you will not be able to decrypt and restore backed-up data. To learn how to save the key, see Managing Encryption Keys.

• A native Amazon Web Services Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer-managed master encryption key.

If a customer-managed master encryption key is used to encrypt data, you must not remove this key from the related AWS account. Otherwise, you will not be able to decrypt and restore backed -up data.

How Encryption Works

Veeam Backup for Salesforce performs data encryption in one of the following ways:

- When you create a backup policy and enable data encryption, the product runs data and file jobs to encrypt data and files on the fly.
- When you edit a backup policy and enable encryption for already protected fields and files, the product runs an encryption job either immediately or an hour later, depending on the settings that you specify. Keep in mind that for larger Salesforce organizations, encryption operations may take significant time to complete.

When the encryption process completes, Veeam Backup for Salesforce further runs data and file jobs instead of encryption jobs to encrypt the protected fields and files on the fly. For more information on types of backup jobs, see Backup Job Types.

Data Restore

Veeam Backup for Salesforce offers the following restore options:

- Restore records fully restores the content of a record, with all fields that are marked as *updatable* and *creatable* in Salesforce. You can also restore attachments associated with this record and the related object hierarchy.
- Restore field value restores specific field values of a Salesforce record. Consider that you can only restore values of existing fields using this type of restore. If any fields no longer exist in Salesforce, you must restore metadata first.
- Restore metadata restores Salesforce metadata.
- Restore files restores Salesforce files and attachments.

You can restore records, field values and metadata to the most recent state or to any available version.

How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Restores Object Hierarchy

Consider the following example. You want to restore a record in the **Contact** object:

- This record refers to another record in the **Account** object. In this case, the **Account** object is the 1st level parent for the **Contact** object.
- There are 2 backed-up records in the **Case** object linked to the record you want to restore. The **Case** object is the 1st level child for the **Contact** object. If there are also records in the **CaseMilestone** object that are linked to these 2 records in the **Case** object, the **CaseMilestone** object will be the 2nd level child for the **Contact** object.

Parent Object Restore

By default, the product restores the 1st level parent records only (that is, the record in the **Account** object from our example). However, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to restore parent records of higher hierarchy levels as described in section **Restoring Records**. While restoring a parent record, the product checks whether the record exists in Salesforce:

- If the parent record exists in Salesforce, the product skips the record and does not proceed to higher levels of the parent hierarchy for this record.
- If the parent record does not exist in Salesforce, the product creates the record in Salesforce using the backed-up data.

Child Object Restore

By default, the product restores child records 2 levels deep down the hierarchy only (that is, 2 records in the **Case** object and records in the **CaseMilestone** object in our example). However, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to restore child records of deeper hierarchy levels as described in section Restoring Records. While restoring a child record, the product checks whether the record exists in Salesforce and does one of the following:

- If a child record exists in Salesforce and has the same data as the backed-up record data, the product skips the record.
- If a child record exists in Salesforce, but the record data has changed, the product updates the record using the backed-up data.
- If a child record exists in Salesforce but it is in the Salesforce Recycle Bin, the product restores the record from the Recycle Bin.
- If a child record does not exist in Salesforce, the product creates the record in Salesforce using the backed-up data.

Planning and Preparation

Before you start installing Veeam Backup for Salesforce, check system requirements for the product components, network ports used for data transmission, required permissions and other prerequisites. For more information on the product components, see Solution Architecture.

System Requirements

The machine where Veeam Backup for Salesforce will be deployed, the machines running PostgreSQL servers used to host databases, and the file shares used to store backed-up data must meet the necessary hardware and software requirements.

Management Server

Specification	Requirement
Hardware	 <i>CPU</i>: modern multi-core x64 processor (minimum 4 cores recommended) <i>Memory</i>: 4 GB RAM (minimum). If you plan to protect multiple Salesforce organizations, it is recommended that you add 4 GB for the management server and 1 GB per each protected organization. <i>Free space</i>: 100 GB (minimum), excluding file and log storage space. For file storage space requirements, see File Storage. For log storage space requirements, see Log Storage. <i>Network bandwidth</i>: 10 Mbps (minimum) Note: To improve performance of the management server, it is recommended that you use SSDs for databases and file storage.
OS	 RedHat Linux 8.x, 9.x Oracle Linux 8.x, 9.x AlmaLinux 8.8 to 8.10, 9.x Rocky Linux 8.8 to 8.10, 9.x Ubuntu 20.04.x LTS, 22.04.x LTS
Software	 Oracle JDK (Java) 17 (included in the setup) Versionlock Plug-in for DNF (plug-in <i>python3-dnf-plugin-versionlock</i> is included in the setup)
File System	 XFS EXT4 Note: Due to technical limitations on the number of directory files in EXT4, Veeam Backup for Salesforce may report incorrect storage capacity values when performing file backups. That is why it is recommended that you use the XFS file system even though both systems are fully supported.

PostgreSQL Servers

Specification	Requirement
Hardware	 <i>CPU</i>: 4 cores (minimum) <i>Memory</i>: 16 GB RAM if the largest object in your Salesforce organization contains no more than 2M records; 32 GB RAM and more if you have objects that contain more than 2OM records. <i>Free space</i>: The initial backup of Salesforce data requires at least x1.6 more disk space in PostgreSQL since the product stores both the latest and history records. You can calculate the required disk space as described in section Sizing and Scalability Guidelines. To learn how to monitor your data storage and used file space in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation. Note: When working with production organizations, it is required to use SSDs on the machines running the PostgreSQL servers to avoid performance issues. However, for non-production organizations, you can use either SSDs or HDDs.
Software	PostgreSQL 13.x, 14.x, 15.x (version 15.8 is included in the setup)

File Storage

Specification	Requirement
Hardware	Veeam Backup for Salesforce stores file data and metadata in the /opt/vbsf/data folder on the management server. It is recommended that you create a dedicated partition for the file storage and mount it to the specified directory. Consider that network file shares are not supported.
	Make sure that you provide your file storage with enough space taking into account the total size of the files used in Salesforce and your daily change rate. To view the amount of space used by your files, open the Salesforce UI, navigate to Setup > Company Information and check the Used File Space field. For more information, see Sizing and Scalability Guidelines.
	Note : To improve performance of the management server, it is recommended that you use SSDs for the file storage.

Log Storage

Specification	Requirement
Hardware	Veeam Backup for Salesforce stores its logs in the /var/log/vbsf/ folder on the management server. It is recommended that you create a dedicated partition for log storage with a minimum of 50 GB of disk capacity and mount it to the specified directory. For more information, see Sizing and Scalability Guidelines.

Salesforce

Specification	Requirement
Salesforce API	By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 uses Salesforce API version 60.0. Any objects available in later API versions will not be discovered and protected by the product. Note: You can change the API version used by the product as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

Ports

The following network ports must be open to ensure proper communication of components in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce infrastructure.

From	То	Protocol	Port	Notes
Web browser (local machine)	Management server	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to access the Web UI component from a user workstation.
		SSH	22	Required to communicate with the backup service running on the management server.
	Salesforce	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to communicate with Salesforce entities.
	Microsoft Azure	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to communicate with Microsoft Azure entities.
Management server	PostgreSQL servers	ТСР	5432	Required to communicate with servers hosting databases used to store backed-up data.
	Salesforce	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to communicate with Salesforce entities.
	SMTP server	ТСР	25	Default port used for sending email notifications.
	Veeam License Server (vbsf.butler.veeam.com)	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to activate licenses, to verify license updates and metering.
	Veeam Update Notification Server (repository.veeam.com)	TCP/HTTPS	443	Required to verify availability of product updates, notify users on these updates and install the updates on the management server.

Permissions

To perform backup and restore operations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce requires the following permissions to be provided.

Salesforce API Integration

Account	Required Permissions		
Salesforce User	Veeam Backup for Salesforce requires a Standard User with the <i>Salesforce</i> license type to connect to a Salesforce organization to perform backup and restore operations for Salesforce resources. Note that free Salesforce Integration Users cannot perform backup and restore operations.		
	The user whose credentials are used to authorize the connection must be assigned full permissions required to read and modify data:		
	 System Administrator profile (grants broad permissions immediately, but not all the required ones). Permission set that has the following permissions enabled: Query All Files permission to back up and archive all files. View Encrypted Data permission to back up object records with encrypted fields (Salesforce Classic encryption). Modify All Data permission to archive data. Bulk API Hard Delete permission to use Bulk API while archiving data. View and Edit Converted Leads permission to restore converted leads. Permissions for all custom record types of objects to restore records of custom types. Set Audit Fields upon Record Creation permission to restore original values in audit fields when restoring deleted records. Update Records with Inactive Owners permission to restore deleted records owned by inactive users. Update Email Messages permission to restore attachments of archive archive and archive and archive and archive arcords archive archive archive archive archive arcords archive		
	 Permission set licenses for any managed application license that is required for accessing the data (for example, HVS, CPQ). Feature-based user permissions: Marketing User, Service Cloud User, Knowledge User, Salesforce CRM Content User. Record-based user permissions: for correct archival of different types of object records, the user must have permissions to modify each of those types of records. 		
	For sandboxes, any managed application needs to be enabled and license provided to the user. For example, High Velocity Sales requires application activation.		

Account	Required Permissions
AWS Key Management Service	 The IAM and key policies that Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses when encrypting data with AWS KMS keys must provide permissions to perform the following operations: <i>ListKeys</i> operation to get the list of available keys. <i>Encrypt</i> operation to encrypt data with AWS KMS keys. <i>Decrypt</i> operation to decrypt data with AWS KMS keys. <i>DescribeKey</i> operation to retrieve information about AWS KMS keys. For more information on the IAM and key policies, see AWS Documentation.
Salesforce Connected App	 Veeam Backup for Salesforce establishes secure and encrypted connections to Salesforce using tokens of Connected Apps. When creating and configuring a Connected App, make sure the following OAuth scopes are added to the app: Full access (full) Perform requests at any time (refresh_token, offline_access) Access unique user identifiers (openid) To learn how to create the app, see Performing Initial Configuration. Note: The Access unique user identifiers (openid) option applies only if you use Salesforce as an identity provider. For more information on OAuth scopes in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce Components

Account	Required Permissions
PostgreSQL Database User	Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates databases and database schemas to store Salesforce data and metadata. Therefore, the database user must be granted permissions to create schemas and databases.
	Note : If you do not grant the user permissions to create databases, you will have to manually create databases on PostgreSQL servers first, and then add databases to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Databases, before you create any backup policies.

Considerations and Limitations

When you plan your deployment of Veeam Backup for Salesforce, keep in mind the following limitations and considerations.

Supported Salesforce Offerings

• Salesforce provides multiple offerings that are built on one Salesforce Platform — Sales Cloud, Service Cloud, Financial Cloud, Health Cloud and Education. Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 supports backup of all data and objects available on the Salesforce Platform if these resources can be retrieved using the Salesforce API version 60 and earlier. This means that if an object or data cannot be obtained using standard Salesforce API requests, backup of these objects is not supported.

Salesforce Marketing Cloud is built on another platform and is not protected by the product.

- Both Salesforce Classic and Lightning Experience interfaces are supported.
- Salesforce sandbox organizations as well as Salesforce production organizations can be protected by Veeam Backup for Salesforce.
- All Salesforce API-enabled editions are supported: Developer, Enterprise, Performance, Professional (API access must be enabled), Unlimited.

Backup and Restore

- Backup and restore of *EmailTemplate, Document, Report* and *Dashboard* types of metadata objects located in private folders are not supported since Salesforce does not provide API to export and restore this type of data.
- Backup of *KnowledgeArticle* types of objects is not supported.
- Backup of *BigObject* types of objects is not supported.
- Backup and restore of *TenantSecret* types of objects is not supported.
- Backup of embedded images added to *ContentNote* types of objects is not supported.
- Backup of embedded images in rich text area fields is supported only if the fields are not encrypted.
- Backup of *FeedItem* and *FeedAttachment* types of objects can be performed only when backing up *ContentVersion* types of objects.
- Restore of *MobileApplicationDetail* and *MailmergeTemplate* types of content is not supported.
- Restore of embedded images deleted from *ContentNote*, *FeedItem* and *FeedComment* types of objects is not supported.
- Restore of *FeedAttachment* types of objects can be performed only when restoring the related *FeedItem* object hierarchy and only if the related *FeedItem* object is deleted from Salesforce.
- Restore of *ContentVersion* types of objects can be performed only if they were added as attachments (not embedded images) to the related *FeedItem* object.
- Backup of Salesforce objects listed in Appendix A. Unsupported Objects is not supported.
- Backup of certain metadata types is not supported due to Salesforce limitations. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.

IMPORTANT

For fields that already have backups, it is recommended that you do not change their types in Salesforce since this may cause backup failures.

Time Zone

The product Web UI uses the time zone of a machine from which you access Veeam Backup for Salesforce. However, the management server and databases use the UTC time zone for all operations.

Salesforce User

- Set the English language in the locale and account language settings for the user in Salesforce. It is required for error handler to work properly.
- Make sure that you have assigned the user all the required permissions. Note that if a Salesforce user of the protected organization does not have permissions required to back up specific files or object fields, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not be able able to back up these files or fields. To work around the issue, reload object fields or files as described in section Reloading Fields and Files.

Sizing and Scalability Guidelines

This section is intended for professionals who search for a best practice answer to sizing-related issues, and assumes you have already read the whole Veeam Backup for Salesforce User Guide.

Be aware that a best practice is not the only answer available. It will fit in the majority of cases but can also be totally wrong under different circumstances. Make sure you understand the implications of the recommended practices, or request assistance. If in doubt, reach out to Veeam professionals on Veeam R&D Forums.

PostgreSQL

To provide stable operation of a PostgreSQL server, make sure that you have enough disk space and compute resources allocated to the server and the following recommended settings configured.

General Recommendations

- It is highly recommended that you install PostgreSQL on a dedicated server.
- It is recommended that you back up PostgreSQL databases on a regular basis. You can use Veeam Backup & Replication for this purpose.

Disk Size Calculation

When calculating the disk space required for the PostgreSQL server, take into account your desired data set, daily change rate and the retention policy settings. The initial backup of Salesforce data requires at least x1.6 more disk space in PostgreSQL since the product creates both the latest and history records. All further backups are incremental and consume the same amount of disk space as original records occupy in Salesforce.

You can use the following formula to calculate the required disk space: (*Salesforce Used Data Space * 1.6) + (Size of Added Data * Planned Period of Data Backup) + (Size of Changed Data * Number of Backups Within Your Retention Period).*

TIP

To check the amount of space currently occupied by your data in Salesforce, open the Salesforce UI and navigate to **Setup** > **Company Information**.

Consider the following example:

- Salesforce Used Data Space your Salesforce database initially stores 200 GB of data.
- Size of Added Data 10,000 records of 2 KB each are added to the Salesforce database daily (that is, 10,000 * 2 KB / 1024 = 0.02 GB).
- *Planned Period of Data Backup* data is planned to be backed up daily for a period of 5 years (that is, *5* *365 days = 1825 days).
- *Size of Changed Data* 10,000 records of 2 KB each are changed in the Salesforce database each backup cycle (that is, *10,000 * 2 KB / 1024 = 0.02 GB*).
- *Number of Backups Within Your Retention Period* backup is performed every hour (that is, 24 backups per day) while the retention period is set to 180 days.

In this case, the amount of the disk space required for the PostgreSQL server will be calculated as follows: (200 GB * 1.6) + (0.02 GB * 1825) + (0.02 GB * 24 * 180) = 320 GB + 36.5 GB + 86.4 GB = 443 GB.

PostgreSQL Configuration Settings

Consider adjusting the default settings in the <code>postgresql.conf</code> configuration file as follows:

Parameter	Value
max_connections	300 or more*
superuser_reserved_connections	7
shared_buffers	20% of RAM
random_page_cost	1.1
work_mem	15% of RAM
maintenance_work_mem	128 MB
max_wal_size	3 GB
min_wal_size	2 GB
checkpoint_completion_target	0.9
effective_io_concurrency	200
effective_cache_size	60% of RAM

*Veeam Backup for Salesforce requires about 20 connections to one PostgreSQL database for management operations, about 50 connections per one backup policy and 10 connections per one custom backup schedule. To avoid performance issues, it is recommended that you set the maximum allowed number of connections to 300 in the PostgeSQL database configuration. You may need to adjust this number later based on the number of created backup policies and schedules.

Log Storage

Logs can consume significant amount of disk space. The total log size depends on the log retention policy and daily change rate in your organizations. If the management server runs out of space, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will fail to run. To provide stable operation of the product, consider the following:

- Before you deploy Veeam Backup for Salesforce, create a dedicated partition for log storage and allocate to it at least 10 % of the file and data space used in Salesforce. For example, if you have 200 GB of files and 300 GB of data in your Salesforce organization, you must allocate at least 50 GB to this partition. Then, you must mount the partition to the /var/log/vbsf/ folder.
- After you deploy Veeam Backup for Salesforce, specify for how long you want to retain the product logs. To do that, modify the logging.backup.file.retention, logging.restore.file.retention and logging.backend.file.retention parameter values as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

File Storage

As Veeam Backup for Salesforce stores Salesforce file data and metadata in the same format as they are stored in Salesforce, files can consume significant amount of disk space. The total file size depends on the file retention policy and daily change rate in your organizations. To provide stable operation of the product, consider the following:

- Before you deploy Veeam Backup for Salesforce, create a dedicated partition for file storage and mount this partition to the /opt/vbsf/data/ folder. When you configure a backup policy, Veeam Backup for Salesforce verifies whether disk space available in the specified directory is enough for the amount of data that will be backed up and raises a warning in case of insufficient storage capacity. That is why it is recommended that you mount additional storage to the specified location to prevent the shortage of storage capacity.
- The product deletes backed-up files from its file repository according to the configured retention settings only. That means if you manually delete a file in Salesforce, it will not be automatically deleted from the repository.

Licensing

A product license is required for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to run. Each product license can be used to protect one or multiple Salesforce organizations. Each product license can be used in one or multiple product installations.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce is licensed per User. A User is defined as a Standard User with the Salesforce or Salesforce Platform license type reported by the Salesforce Classic or Salesforce Lightning platform. However, this applies only to Salesforce user licenses consumed by protected production organizations since Users of Salesforce sandbox organizations do not consume any license units. The latter means that you can protect as many sandbox organizations as you want — but only if the production organization is licensed and the total number of Salesforce users in each sandbox organization does not exceed the limit of licensed Users in your Veeam license.

The Veeam license is also not required for:

- Salesforce user licenses consumed by Developer Edition organizations.
- Salesforce Chatter Free, Chatter Only, Chatter External, Partner Community, Customer Community, Customer Community Plus user licenses.
- Salesforce Identity licenses.

If the total number of reported user licenses of all Salesforce production organizations protected by Veeam Backup for Salesforce management servers that use the same license key exceeds the limit of license units for more than 10 Users or 10% of licensed units (whichever is greater), you will be able neither to perform backup operations nor to add new Salesforce organizations that you want to protect — until you update the license.

IMPORTANT

The management server must have the outbound internet access to communicate with Salesforce API, Veeam License and Update Notification servers. If the connection is lost, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not be able to activate new licenses, will continue operating for 30 days under the current license, and then halt all backup operations.

License Types

Veeam Backup for Salesforce is available in the following license editions:

- **Community Edition** the built-in license that allows you to protect up to 50 Users free of charge. This license comes without any technical support. Only community and best-effort technical support are available.
- NFR, Evaluation— the licenses that can be used for product demonstration, training or education. These licenses are not for resale or commercial use. For more information, see Veeam End User License Agreement (EULA).
- Subscription the subscription-based license that expires at the end of the subscription term. The maximum number of users protected by Veeam Backup for Salesforce depends on the number of units specified in your license.

To purchase the license, it is required to provide the production ID of a Salesforce organization that you will protect with Veeam Backup for Salesforce. If you plan to protect more than one production organization, you can provide the ID of any of these organizations. To learn how to find the Salesforce Organization ID, see Salesforce Documentation.

To work with Veeam Backup for Salesforce, you can use either the *Foundation* license package (available for the *Community Edition* and *Subscription* license types) or *Advanced* license package (available for the *Evaluation*, *NFR* and *Subscription* license types). The *Foundation* license package allows you to perform backup and restore operations, while the *Advanced* license package allows you to perform backup, restore and archival operations. To learn how to obtain a license, contact a Veeam sales representative at Sales Inquiry.

TIP

When the Veeam license expires, Veeam Backup for Salesforce offers a grace period to ensure a smooth license update and to provide sufficient time to install a new license file. The duration of the grace period is 30 days after the expiration of the license. During this period, you can perform all types of data protection operations. After the grace period is over, Veeam Backup for Salesforce stops processing all objects and files, and disables all scheduled backup and archival policies. You must update your license before the end of the grace period.

Installing and Removing License

On the **License** tab, you can see the current license details, install a new license or remove the currently used license.

To purchase new license, renew or add more licenses, you can contact Veeam partners or request a quote from a Veeam sales representative. For more information, see the Veeam website.

Installing License

To install or update a license installed on the management server, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to License.
- 3. Click Install License.
- 4. In the Install License window, click Browse to browse to a license file, and then click Upload.

හ	Backup Res	tore Browse Archive			Administrator 🗸	English	•
$\langle \epsilon$	Exit Configuration	License Information					
Арр	lication	🐺 Purchase Additional Licenses 🛛 🕈	🔋 Install License 🛛 🌋 Check License 🛛 🗙 Remove Licens	e			
	Salesforce	Status:	 License is valid (286 days left) 				
21	Lisers and Roles	License type:	Subscription				
	osci s and noies	Package:	SalesforceAdvanced				
۲	Security	Expiration date:	4/2/25				
10	Alerts	Company:	Install License	×			
2	License	Email:	Browse to license file				
10	About	Licensed (Users):					
~	Abodi	Consumed (Salesforce users):	license.lic	Browse			
		Consumed (Salesforce Platform users):					
		License ID:					
		Support ID:		Upload Close			
		License Agreements		<u> </u>			
		End User License Agreement Licensin	g Policy Required 3rd Party License Agreement				
		Veeam Backup for Salesforce © 2024 V	eeam Software Group GmbH. All rights reserved.				

Removing License

To remove a license installed on the management server if you no longer need it:

1. On the License tab, click Remove License.

2. In the **Remove License** window, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to remove the license.

Backup Restore Browse	Archive	Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	n		
Application	al Licenses 🛛 🎇 Install License 🦙 Check License 🛛 🗙 Remove License		
 Salesforce Users and Roles Security Alerts License License License License License About Support ID: License Agreemen End User License Agree Veeam Backup for Sale 	License is valid (286 days left) Subscription SalesforceAdvanced 4/2/25 Remove License Please confirm that you want to remove the license. All archival policies will be disabled. Its ement Licensing Policy Required 3rd Party License Agreement software Group GmbH. All rights reserved.		

IMPORTANT

- If you remove the license, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically switch back to the built-in *Community Edition* license. In this case, you will be able to protect maximum 50 Salesforce licensed users. For more information on license editions, see Licensing.
- If you change the license package from *Advanced* to *Foundation*, archiving will be no longer available and all existing archival policies will be disabled.

Viewing License Information

The license validity is verified by the Veeam License Server right after the installation and, then, periodically once a week. You can also verify the license manually, to do that:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to License and click Check License.

During license validation, the counts of users per protected Salesforce organization are reported to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, and then used in license metering and billing. In case licensing servers cannot be reached and new licenses cannot be installed, the grace period starts automatically from the last successful license check date.

The **License information** section provides general information on the Veeam Backup for Salesforce license:

- **Status** the license status. The status depends on the license edition, the number of days remaining until license expiration and the license check result.
- License type the license type (Community Edition, Evaluation, NFR, Subscription).
- Package the license package (Foundation, Advanced).
- **Expiration date** the date when the license will expire.
- **Company** the name of a company to which the license was issued.
- **Email** the email of a contact person specified in the contract.
- Licensed (Users) the total number of licensed Users.
- **Consumed (Salesforce Users)** the total number of consumed *Salesforce* user licenses across all protected Salesforce production organizations.
- **Consumed (Salesforce Platform Users)** the total number of consumed *Salesforce Platform* user licenses across all protected Salesforce production organizations.
- License ID the unique identification number of the license file.
- **Support ID** the unique identification number of the Veeam support contract.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive		Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	License Information			
Application	🐺 Purchase Additional Licenses 🛛 🔅	Install License 🦙 Check License 🛛 🗙 Remove License		
 Salesforce 	Status:	License is valid (286 days left)		
Lisers and Roles	License type:	Subscription		
	Package:	SalesforceAdvanced		
Security	Expiration date:	4/2/25		
R Alerts	Company:	AB TEST ACCOUNT		
0 Liconco	Email:	abtest@test.com		
a License	Licensed (Users):	10000		
🗙 About	Consumed (Salesforce users):	11		
	Consumed (Salesforce Platform users):	0		
	License ID:	50E3EEDE-FD1C-F9FD-1249-50E3685AB5EA		
	Support ID:	04300388		
	License Agreements			
	End User License Agreement Licensing Policy Required 3rd Party License Agreement			
	Veeam Backup for Salesforce @ 2024 Veeam Software Group GmbH. All rights reserved.			
Deployment

You can install Veeam Backup for Salesforce on a virtual or a physical machine.

Before you begin installation, check the following prerequisites:

1. Make sure that the machine where you plan to install Veeam Backup for Salesforce meets the minimal system requirements and the required ports are open. You must be also able to access the Salesforce authentication webpage from the machine.

It is recommended that you install Veeam Backup for Salesforce on a new or empty machine so that the management server does not conflict with other applications. Consider having enough free disk space for the log, metadata and file storage. For more information on the required disk space, see System Requirements.

- 2. To install Veeam Backup for Salesforce software packages, you must use the root or super user account to install the system components and services.
- 3. If you have SELinux installed, you must allow httpd to connect to the network. To do that, run the following command:

```
sudo setsebool -P httpd can network connect on
```

Installing Veeam Backup for Salesforce on RedHat, AlmaLinux, Rocky and Oracle Machines

You can install Veeam Backup for Salesforce on a RedHat, AlmaLinux, Rocky or Oracle machine automatically using the installation script or manually.

Installing Product Using Script

To install Veeam Backup for Salesforce, complete the following steps:

1. Set the Linux system locale to UTF-8 running the following command:

sudo localectl set-locale LANG=en_US.UTF-8

- 2. Log out of the current session and log back in to apply the new locale settings.
- 3. Download the installation script to the machine where you want to deploy Veeam Backup for Salesforce running the following command:

```
sudo curl https://repository.veeam.com/yum/el/vbsf-install-script.sh --out
put ./vbsf-install-script.sh
```

4. Run the script:

sudo sh ./vbsf-install-script.sh

The Linux package manager will install the Veeam software repository. When the repository is installed, the manager will start installation of Veeam Backup for Salesforce and dependencies, and run configuration checks.

After all configuration checks complete successfully, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically run the server configuration script on the Linux host. For more information, see Configuring Server Settings.

Installing Product Manually

To install Veeam Backup for Salesforce, complete the following steps:

1. Update all installed Linux packages and their dependencies running the following command:

```
sudo yum update -y
```

2. Set the Linux system locale to UTF-8 running the following command:

```
sudo localectl set-locale LANG=en US.UTF-8
```

- 3. Log out of the current session and log back in to apply the new locale settings.
- Download the Veeam software repository installation package (veeam-release) from the Veeam Download page:

```
sudo curl http://repository.veeam.com/yum/el/veeam-repo-1.0.1-6.x86_64.rpm
--output veeam-repo.rpm
```

5. Install the Veeam software repository:

```
sudo yum install -y ./veeam-repo.rpm
```

6. Install the product from the Veeam software repository:

```
sudo yum install -y vbsf
```

The Linux package manager will start installation of Veeam Backup for Salesforce and dependencies, and then run configuration checks.

After all configuration checks complete successfully, you will be prompted to run the server configuration script. For more information, see Configuring Server Settings.



Configuring Server Settings

To perform server configuration, run the configuration script:

sudo sh /opt/vbsf/server-configuration.sh

To complete server configuration, do the following:

1. Confirm that you have enough disk space to store backup data.

NOTE

To store backups of Salesforce files and metadata, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will create a file repository per each protected Salesforce organization on the management server in the following folder: /opt/vbsf/data. If you want to change the folder, modify the data.storage.location parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

2. Choose whether you want to install PostgreSQL on the management server.

When installing PostgreSQL locally on the management server, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will run the installation script and create two users: the **postgres** user – the root database user, and the **vbsf** user – the local user. The **vbsf** user will be automatically provisioned into the default application configuration.

User credentials will be automatically generated and saved to the /opt/vbsf/vbsfbackend/config/vbsf_default_credentials.properties file. If you change the created passwords using the PostgreSQL standard methods, the passwords stored in the file will not automatically change and will become invalid.

NOTE

You can install PostgreSQL locally on the management server to host the configuration database. However, to avoid disk space issues, it is recommended that you create databases that will be used to protect production and sandbox Salesforce organizations on remote PostgreSQL servers. To do that, skip this step and connect to a remote PostgreSQL database later when performing the initial configuration.

- 3. Confirm that you want to configure Firewalld to allow incoming HTTPS connections through port 443. This is required to access the Web UI component from a user workstation. For more information, see Ports.
- 4. Choose whether you want to automatically configure nginx settings required for the management server to work properly.

It is recommended that you allow Veeam Backup for Salesforce to configure nginx automatically. To learn how to configure nginx manually, see this Veeam KB article.

After the automatic nginx configuration completes, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the web address that will be used to launch the initial configuration wizard. The address contains an IPv4 address of the server and a token used to authorize the user access.

TIP

If you accidentally close the terminal or the connection session during installation, or if you configure nginx manually, run the sh /opt/vbsf/access_token.sh command on the machine where Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed to get the web address URL.

5. Copy the automatically generated URL and paste it into a web browser to proceed with the initial configuration of Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

IMPORTANT

By default, the URL contains an IP address of the management server. If the specified IP address is not available over HTTPS, replace it with the public IP of the management server or the DNS name configured for the machine where the Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed.

Installing Veeam Backup for Salesforce on Ubuntu Machines

You can install Veeam Backup for Salesforce on an Ubuntu machine automatically using the installation script or manually.

Installing Product Using Script

To install Veeam Backup for Salesforce, complete the following steps:

1. Set the Ubuntu system locale to UTF-8 running the following command:

```
sudo localectl set-locale LANG=en_US.UTF-8
sudo update-locale
```

- 2. Log out of the current session and log back in to apply the new locale settings.
- 3. Download the installation script to the machine where you want to deploy Veeam Backup for Salesforce running the following command:

```
sudo curl https://repository.veeam.com/apt/stable/amd64/vbsf-install-scrip
t.sh --output ./vbsf-install-script.sh
```

4. Run the script:

sudo bash ./vbsf-install-script.sh

The Ubuntu package manager will install the Veeam software repository. When the repository is installed, the manager will start installation of Veeam Backup for Salesforce and dependencies, and run configuration checks.

After all configuration checks complete successfully, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically run the server configuration script on the Ubuntu host. For more information, see Configuring Server Settings.

Installing Product Manually

To install Veeam Backup for Salesforce, complete the following steps:

1. Update all installed Ubuntu packages and their dependencies running the following command:

```
sudo apt update -y
```

2. Set the Ubuntu system locale to UTF-8 running the following command:

```
sudo localectl set-locale LANG=en_US.UTF-8
sudo update-locale
```

- 3. Log out of the current session and log back in to apply the new locale settings.
- Download the Veeam software repository installation package (veeam-release) from the Veeam Download page:

```
sudo curl http://repository.veeam.com/apt/stable/amd64/veeam-repo_1.0.0-13
_amd64.deb --output veeam-repo.deb
```

5. Install the Veeam software repository:

```
sudo apt install -y ./veeam-repo.deb
```

6. Install the product from the Veeam software repository:

```
sudo apt-get -y update
sudo apt install -y vbsf
```

The Ubuntu package manager will start installation of Veeam Backup for Salesforce and dependencies, and then run configuration checks.

After all configuration checks complete successfully, you will be prompted to run the server configuration script. For more information, see Configuring Server Settings.

```
update=alternatives: using /usr/lib/jvm/java=11-openjdk-amd64/bin/rmid to provide /usr/bin/rmiregistry (rmiregistry) in auto mode

update=alternatives: using /usr/lib/jvm/java=11-openjdk-amd64/bin/rmiregistry (rmiregistry) in auto mode

update=alternatives: using /usr/lib/jvm/java=11-openjdk-amd64/bin/unpack200 to provide /usr/bin/unpack200 (unpack200) in auto mode

update=alternatives: using /usr/lib/jvm/java=11-openjdk-amd64/bin/unpack200 to provide /usr/bin/unpack200 (unpack200) in auto mode

update=alternatives: using /usr/lib/jvm/java=11-openjdk-amd64/bin/unpack200 to provide /usr/bin/unpack200 (unpack200) in auto mode

Stiting up vofs (2.0.6-3031) ...

Generate product key

Created symlink /etc/system/system/multi-user.target.wants/vbsf-backend.service → /lib/system/system/vbsf-backend.service.

Created symlink /etc/system/system/multi-user.target.wants/vbsf-backend.service → /lib/systemd/system/vbsf-restore.service.

The package "Veeam Backup for Salesforce" has been installed.

To begin with server configuration, please run the script:

sudo bash /opt/vbsf/server-configuration.sh

Scanning processes...

Scanning linux images...

Running kernel seems to be up-to-date.

No services need to be restarted.

No user sessions are running outdated binaries.
```

Configuring Server Settings

To perform server configuration, run the configuration script:

```
sudo bash /opt/vbsf/server-configuration.sh
```

To complete server configuration, do the following:

1. Confirm that you have enough disk space to store backup data.

NOTE

To store backups of Salesforce files and metadata, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will create a file repository per each protected Salesforce organization on the management server in the following folder: /opt/vbsf/data. If you want to change the folder, modify the data.storage.location parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

2. Choose whether you want to install PostgreSQL on the management server.

When installing PostgreSQL locally on the management server, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will run the installation script and create two users: the **postgres** user – the root database user, and the **vbsf** user – the local user. The **vbsf** user will be automatically provisioned into the default application configuration.

User credentials will be automatically generated and saved to the /opt/vbsf/vbsfbackend/config/vbsf_default_credentials.properties file. If you change the created passwords using the PostgreSQL standard methods, the passwords stored in the file will not automatically change and will become invalid.

NOTE

You can install PostgreSQL locally on the management server to host the configuration database. However, to avoid disk space issues, it is recommended that you create databases that will be used to protect production and sandbox Salesforce organizations on remote PostgreSQL servers. To do that, skip this step and connect to a remote PostgreSQL database later when performing the initial configuration.

- 3. Confirm that you want to configure firewall to allow incoming HTTPS connections through port 443. This is required to access the Web UI component from a user workstation. For more information, see Ports.
- 4. Choose whether you want to automatically configure nginx settings required for the management server to work properly.

It is recommended that you allow Veeam Backup for Salesforce to configure nginx automatically. To learn how to configure nginx manually, see this Veeam KB article.

After the automatic nginx configuration completes, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the web address that will be used to launch the initial configuration wizard. The address contains an IPv4 address of the server and a token used to authorize the user access.

TIP

If you accidentally close the terminal or the connection session during installation, or if you configure nginx manually, run the sh /opt/vbsf/access_token.sh command on the machine where Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed to get the web address URL.

5. Copy the automatically generated URL and paste it into a web browser to proceed with the initial configuration of Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

IMPORTANT

By default, the URL contains an IP address of the management server. If the specified IP address is not available over HTTPS, replace it with the public IP of the management server or the DNS name configured for the machine where the Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed.



Performing Initial Configuration

To start working with Veeam Backup for Salesforce, you must perform the initial configuration of the management server. To do that, in a web browser, navigate to the web address that has been automatically generated by Veeam Backup for Salesforce during installation. The address must contain a public IPv4 address or DNS name of the server that is available over HTTPS, and a token used to authorize the first user access.

The unique token is not dependent on the host name. If the host is accessible by several IP addresses, or you have configured a proper domain name, you can replace the host address with the more appropriate one.

IMPORTANT

- Internet Explorer is not supported. To access Veeam Backup for Salesforce, use the latest versions of Microsoft Edge, Mozilla Firefox (except Mozilla Firefox for Linux), Safari and Google Chrome.
- You must be able to access the Salesforce authentication webpage from the machine that you use to log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.
- The management server is using a self-signed SSL certificate for nginx. However, this certificate is not trusted and will trigger a browser certificate warning. You can replace the certificate manually to the trusted one as soon as you finish the configuration, as described in Appendix B. Replacing Security Certificate.

To configure the management server, complete the initial configuration wizard:

- 1. Read and accept license agreement.
- 2. Create the default administrator.
- 3. Connect to a PostgreSQL database and a proxy server.
- 4. Provide a Veeam Backup for Salesforce license file.
- 5. Create a Salesforce Connected App.
- 6. Connect to a Salesforce organization.
- 7. Specify backup schedule settings.
- 8. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Accept License Agreement

At the **Veeam End User License Agreement** step of the wizard, read and accept the Veeam license agreement, Veeam licensing policy and 3rd party components license agreements. If you reject the agreements, you will not be able to continue initial configuration.



Step 2. Create Local Administrator

At the **Create local administrator** step of the wizard, specify a password for the local administrator account. The password must contain uppercase and lowercase Latin letters and special characters (!@#\$%^&`~*()_- =+[]{};':\"|,./<>?). The minimum length of the password is 8 characters. You can change the password of the local administrator as described in section Editing Users.

This is the only local user account that can perform all operations in Veeam Backup for Salesforce including configuration of IdP and SSO settings. Consider that you will not be able to remove or change this account using the Web UI.

After you finish the initial configuration, you will be able to add other users and assign them granular permissions. For more information, see Managing Users.

🕀 English 🗸			
ß		- Park	
Veeam Backup for Salesforce		Create local administrator	
 Veeam End User License Agreement 			
Create local administrator	Username:	aomin	
 Connect to PostgreSQL 	Password:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
• Provide license file	Repeat password:	•	
• Create connected app		Next	
• Connect to Salesforce			
• Set backup schedule			

Step 3. Connect to PosgreSQL

At the **Connect to PostgreSQL** step of the wizard, specify connection settings that will be used to access the following databases:

- The configuration database that will be used to store product data, backup policies, restore jobs, sessions and so on.
- A database that will be used to store backups of all objects, fields, records and relationships of the Salesforce organization connected at step 6 of the wizard.

NOTE

If you perform configuration of the existing deployment of Veeam Backup for Salesforce, specify connection settings that will be used to access the existing configuration database.

You can also configure a web proxy that will be used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to access Salesforce and the Veeam License Server if the management server is not connected to the internet.

Step 3a. Connect to Database

To configure connection settings, do the following at the **Connect to PostgreSQL** step of the wizard:

- 1. In the **PostgreSQL address** field, specify the DNS name or IP address of a PostgreSQL server that will host the databases.
- 2. In the **Port** field, choose a network port that will be used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to connect to the PostgreSQL server. The default port number is 5432.
- 3. Use the **Username** and **Password** fields to provide credentials of the PostgreSQL user that will be used to access the configuration and backup databases.

If you enter the name of a database that does not exist yet, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically create a new database on the specified PostgreSQL server. However, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will be able to do this only if the user that will be used to access the database is assigned the *createdb* permission required to create databases — otherwise, you will have to create an empty database on the specified server manually as described in PostgreSQL Documentation.

NOTE

If you have chosen the option to automatically install PostgreSQL on the management server during Veeam Backup for Salesforce deployment, this step will contain the predefined values: in the **PostgreSQL address** field, the address of the management server will be specified, in the **Username** and **Password** fields, credentials of the **vbsf**PostgreSQL user created when installing PostgreSQL will be provided.

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates new databases with the following names:

- vbsf_backup the name used for the database that will store the backed -up data.
- **vbsf_application** the name used for the configuration database.

If you want to rename the databases or specify the existing ones, set the **Customize** toggle to *On*, and specify the custom names.

TIP

During the initial configuration, you will be prompted to connect to a Salesforce organization that will be protected by a backup policy, which is automatically created by the product. You can skip the default policy creation and connect to a database later when creating a backup policy.

) English 🗸			
Q		Connect to PostgreSQL server	
Veeam Backup for Salesforce	PostgreSQL address:	localhost	
Veeam End User License Agreement	Port:	5432	
Create local administrator	Username:	vbsf	
 Connect to PostgreSQL 	Password:	(configured password)	
• Provide license file	Customize:	On 🗊	
• Create connected app	Configuration database:	Application databases veeam	
• Connect to Salesforce	Salesforce data:	veeam_data	
• Set backup schedule		Skip backup policy creation	
CONTRACTOR OF THE OTHER	Proxy server connection:	Proxy server settings Not configured	

Step 3b. Connect to Proxy Server

If you want to connect to the internet through a web proxy, do the following:

- 1. In the **Proxy server settings** section of the **Connect to PostgreSQL** step of the wizard, set the **Customize** toggle to *On*.
- 2. Click the link in the **Proxy server connection** field.
- 3. Specify the following settings in the **Update proxy server settings** window:
 - a. Set the Always use internet proxy server toggle to On.
 - b. In the Host address field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the web proxy.
 - c. In the **Port** field, enter the port that will be used on the web proxy for HTTP or HTTPS connections.
 - d. [Applies only if the web proxy requires authentication] Use the **Username** and **Password** fields to provide credentials of the user account configured on the web proxy to access the internet.
 - e. In the **Exceptions** section, you can specify a domain name which you do not want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to access through the configured web proxy. To specify multiple domain names, use a pipe-separated list.
 - f. Click Apply.

TIP

You can skip this step and provide the web proxy settings later. To do that, modify the proxy.settings parameter values as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

⊕ English 🖌					
ک	Co	onnect	Update prox Always use inte	y server settings ernet proxy server: On 1	×
Veeam Backup for Salesforce	PostgreSQL address: lo	ocalhost			
Veeam End User License Agreement	Port: 54	i432	Host address: Port:	proxy01.tech.local	
Create local administrator	Username: vt	bsf	Username:	admin	
Connect to PostgreSQL	Password: (c	configured	Password:		۲
• Provide license file	Customize:	On		Exceptions	
• Create connected app	Apj Configuration database:	plication		Do not use proxy server for addresses the following entries. Use bar () to separate	at start with the entries.
• Connect to Salesforce	Salesforce data:			*.local *.demo	
• Set backup schedule] Skip bac			
1 Contraction	Proxy server connection: Not	oxy server	Test Connec	ction Save	Cancel
		Next			

Step 4. Provide License File

At the **Provide license file** step of the wizard, select the **Install a license file** option and browse to the license file supplied to you by Veeam. After you install the license file, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will connect to the Veeam License Server and start the license validation process. As soon as validation completes, you will be able to proceed to the next step of the wizard.

If you do not have a valid license, you can get a 30-day trial license key or proceed with the wizard without providing a license. To proceed with the wizard without providing a license, select the **Community Edition** option. In this case, the built-in *Community Edition* license that allows you to protect Salesforce organizations with up to 50 Users will be installed. For more information on license types, see Licensing.



Step 5. Create Connected App

At the **Create Connected App** step of the wizard, you must configure a Connected App in Salesforce. Security credentials of the Connected App will be used to authorize access to all Salesforce organizations protected by this Veeam Backup for Salesforce installation.

Salesforce Connected App allows Veeam Backup for Salesforce to authenticate with Salesforce and get access to resources that will be protected. You can create the Connected App in any Salesforce organization. To learn how to create the Connected App, see this Veeam KB article.

NOTE

You will be able to change the Connected App as described in section Changing Connected App Tokens, but you must consider that after changing the Connected App, you will have to re-authorize all Salesforce connections added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

When you create the Connected App, consider the following:

- Creation of the Connected App and any changes to its configuration will take up to 10 minutes to apply on the Salesforce side.
- The Connected App must be assigned the **Full access** (full), **Perform requests at any time** (refresh_token, offline_access) and **Access unique user identifiers** (openid) OAuth scopes. For more information on OAuth scopes in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation.
- The following options must be enabled: Enable oAuth Settings, Require Secret for Web Server Flow and Require Secret for Refresh Token Flow.
- The following option must be disabled: Require Proof Key for Code Exchange (PKCE).
- The callback URL specified in the *Callback URLs* list of the Connected App must match the management server FQDN that you use to access the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI.

Consider the following example:

You installed Veeam Backup for Salesforce on the machine with the following IP address: *172.12.0.1*. To properly configure the Connected App, you have copied the URL from the **Callback URL** field at the **Create connected app** step of the initial configuration wizard and added it to the Connected App *Callback URLs* list.

Later, you decide to create the following DNS name for the machine running Veeam Backup for Salesforce: *acme.internal.com*. In this case, you must add the following callback URL to the Connected App *Callback URLs* list: *https://acme.internal.com*.

After that, your Callback URLs list will contain the following URLs:

- o https://172.12.0.1
- https://acme.internal.com

IMPORTANT

You can protect multiple Salesforce organizations using a single Veeam Backup for Salesforce installation. However, due to the Salesforce Connected App limit of 5 authorizations per client, authorization issues may occur when you have several product installations leveraging the same Connected App. That is why it is recommended that you create a dedicated Connected App for each product deployment.

For more information on Salesforce OAuth Authorization Flows and Connected Apps, see Salesforce Documentation.

🌐 English 🖌		
ک		← васк Create Salesforce Connected App
Veeam Backup for Salesforce		First. specify the domain name you will use to access the Veeam Backup for Salesforce. This domain name must be configured and reachable for the product installation.
 Veeam End User License Agreement 	Domain name:	172.22.122.22
Create local administrator		You can adjust this setting later
Connect to PostgreSQL		Create a Salesforce Connected App and setup the Callback URL
Provide license file		Initial connection to Salesforce requires setting up a Connected App in Salesforce.
 Create connected app 		Salesforce.
• Connect to Salesforce		Read KB on Salesforce Connected App
• Set backup schedule	Callback URL:	https://172.22.122.22
		Next

Step 6. Connect to Salesforce

At the **Connect to Salesforce** step of the wizard, connect to a Salesforce organization that will be automatically added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and protected by the default backup policy. The backup policy is created by Veeam Backup for Salesforce during the initial configuration unless you disabled the default policy creation at step 3 of the wizard. For more information on backup policies, see Performing Backup.

To connect to the organization, do the following:

1. Choose whether you want to connect to a Salesforce organization hosted on a production instance, sandbox instance or custom domain.

If you select the **Custom** option, you must also provide the organization domain name. If you specify a *lightning.force.com*, *my.salesforce-sites.com* or *my.site.com* domain names, keep in mind that the product will automatically change this name to *my.salesforce.com*.

2. Provide the consumer key and consumer secret created in the Connected App, and click **Connect**. You will be redirected to the Salesforce authentication webpage.

To learn how to create the key and the secret, see this Veeam KB article.

IMPORTANT

It takes up to 10 minutes for Salesforce to apply any changes in a Connected App. During this time you may get an error that key and secret pair is not active or a callback URL is configured incorrectly.

🕀 English 🗸	
ß	← Back Connect to Salesforce
Veeam Backup for Salesforce Veeam End User License Agreement	Verify with Salesforce domain: Production
Create local administrator	Salestorce login domain: https://login.salesforce.com/
Connect to PostgreSQL	Consumer key:
Provide license file	Consumer secret:
Create connected app	•••••
Connect to Salesforce Set backup schedule	Obtaining Consumer Key and Consumer Secret in Salesforce When setting the Connected App in Salesforce, please pay attention to the Callback URL details. Callback URL must exactly match the server address. Read KB on Salesforce Connected App

3. On the Salesforce authentication webpage, enter credentials of an account created in the Salesforce organization that you want to protect, and click **Log in**.

The specified account must be assigned permissions required for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to be able to perform backup and restore operations. For more information, see Permissions.

NOTE

Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not have access to Salesforce user credentials. To authorize and access Salesforce data, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses OAuth tokens of the Connected App created during the initial configuration. You can change the Connected App as described in section Changing Connected App Tokens, but you must consider that after changing the Connected App, you will have to re-authorize all Salesforce connections added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

4. Back to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce wizard, click Next to proceed with the initial configuration.



Step 7. Set Backup Policy Schedule

[Applies only if you have not selected the Skip backup policy creation check box]

At the **Set backup schedule** step of the wizard, choose one of the built-in schedules that will be used to run the backup policy:

- **Hourly** select this schedule if you want the backup policy session to be launched at the beginning of every hour.
- **Daily** select this schedule if you want the backup policy session to be launched every day at 00:00 UTC.
- Weekly select this schedule if you want the backup policy session to be launched every Sunday at 00:00 UTC.

You can change these settings later as described in section Editing Backup Policies.

TIP

If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start the backup policy for the connected Salesforce organization right after the initial configuration process completes, select the **Start backup policy after finish** check box. Note that the product will back up object records, fields and metadata. If you want to backup files, you must enable the backup of files and attachments when editing the backup policy.

🌐 English 🖌		
	4- Bark	
\sim		
	Set backup policy schedule	
Veeam Backup for Salesforce	Calculus Daily	
vecum backup for balesforce	Schedule: Daily	
 Veeam End User License Agreement 	Start backup policy after finish	
Create local administrator		
Connect to PostgreSQL	Finish	
	Ð	
Provide license file		
 Create connected app 		
Connect to Salesforce		
 Set backup schedule 		

Step 8. Finish Working with Wizard

At the last step of the wizard, click **Go to Application**. After the initial configuration process completes, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will open the product Web UI.

English ¥	
Veeam Backup for Salesforce	Initial setup completed
Create local administrator Connect to PostgreSQL Provide license file Create connected app Connect to Salesforce Set backup schedule	The application is ready to use. Go to Application
<u>S</u>	

Accessing Veeam Backup for Salesforce

To access Veeam Backup for Salesforce, in a web browser, navigate to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce web address. The address consists of a public IPv4 address or a DNS name of the machine where Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed. Keep in mind that the website is available over HTTPS only.

IMPORTANT

Internet Explorer is not supported. To access Veeam Backup for Salesforce, use the latest versions of Microsoft Edge, Mozilla Firefox (except Mozilla Firefox for Linux), Safari or Google Chrome.

Logging In

To log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, do the following:

1. In the **Username** and **Password** fields, specify credentials of a Veeam Backup for Salesforce user.

If you log in for the first time, use credentials of the default Administrator that was created after the product installation. In future, you can add other user accounts to grant access to Veeam Backup for Salesforce. For more information, see Managing Users.

2. Click Log in.

If you have previously connected a Microsoft Entra ID or enabled a Salesforce organization as an identity provider in Veeam Backup for Salesforce, you can click **Single Sign-On with Microsoft Entra ID** or **Single Sign-On with Salesforce**. You will be redirected to the authorization page. If you have not logged in yet, log in to the identity provider portal. After that, you will be redirected to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce page as an authorized user. To learn how to configure the identity provider in Veeam Backup for Salesforce, see Configuring IdP and SSO Settings.

١	ے Veeam Backup for Salesforce/	9
	Please log in admin Log in Forgot password?	
	Or Single Sign-On with Microsoft Entra ID	

Logging Out

To log out, at the top right corner of the Veeam Backup for Salesforce page, click the user name and then click **Log out**.

Configuring Veeam Backup for Salesforce

Right after you perform the initial configuration, you can start working with Veeam Backup for Salesforce. If you want to add users that can access Veeam Backup for Salesforce, to add databases used to protect Salesforce organizations, and to configure additional settings, follow the instructions in these sections:

- Managing Salesforce Organizations
- Managing Companies
- Managing Databases
- Managing Users
- Configuring Security Settings
- Configuring Encryption Settings
- Viewing Audit Trail
- Managing Alerts
- Configuring Advanced Settings

Managing Salesforce Organizations

Salesforce organizations can be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce either automatically when you create backup policies or manually as described in section Adding Organizations. When you connect to a Salesforce organization, the basic organization details and the OAuth authentication tokens of the Connected App are saved to the configuration database.

NOTE

Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not have access to Salesforce user credentials. To authorize and access Salesforce data, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses OAuth tokens of the Connected App created during the initial configuration. You can change the Connected App as described in section Changing Connected App Tokens, but you must consider that after changing the Connected App, you will have to re-authorize all Salesforce connections added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce are grouped to companies. For more information on companies, see Managing Companies.

Adding Organizations

To add a new Salesforce organization, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Salesforce** Orgs.
- 3. Click Add Salesforce Organization. The Add Salesforce Organization window will open.
- 4. In the Log in with Salesforce account section, connect to a Salesforce organization that you want to add. To do that:
 - a. Choose whether you want to use a Salesforce organization hosted on a production instance, sandbox instance or custom domain. If you select the **Custom** option, you must also specify the organization domain name.
 - b. Click Log in with Salesforce account. You will be redirected to the Salesforce authentication webpage.
 - c. On the Salesforce authentication webpage, enter credentials of a Salesforce user of the organization that you want to add, and click Log in. After that, you will be redirected back to the Add Salesforce Organization window in Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

The specified Salesforce user must be assigned permissions required for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to be able to perform backup and restore operations. For information, see Permissions.

- 5. In the Add Salesforce Organization window, in the Select company section, choose whether you want to assign the organization to an existing or to a new company:
 - If you want to add a new company to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and to assign the organization to it, select the **Create new company** option, and specify a name for the new company.
 - If you want to assign the organization to an existing company, select the **Choose existing company** option, and choose the necessary company from the drop-down list.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be created as described in section Adding Companies.

Administrator V () English V B, Exit Configuration Salesforce Orgs Databases Encryption Keys 🔍 🕂 Add Salesforce Organization 🧪 Edit Connection 🗔 Rename 🗒 Change Company 💥 Delete Application Salesforce Alias Add Salesforce Organization × lesforce User Salesforce ID Salesforce Companies Selected: 0 of 4 Log in with Salesforce account Sers and Roles 🗌 🥝 Veeam - Home xiivatio.v2@gmail.com 00D5e000002UMGQEA4 ~ Production (login.salesforce.com) Security 📃 🥝 Veeam - artx2 ax@veeam.com.artx2 00D8C0000004fDMUAY Veeam - partia Alerts x@veeam.com.partial 00D4C0000001BQPUA2 License 🖉 Veeam - fsi (sa @veeam.com.fsi 00D740000000MgSEAU Select company 🔀 About Assign this Salesforce organization to a company Create new company Bonatti Company Choose existing company Save Cancel

6. Click Save.

Editing Organizations

For each Salesforce organization added to the configuration database, you can change the alias – organization name displayed in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI, edit connection settings and re-assign the organization to another company.

Renaming Organizations

When you connect to a Salesforce organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce automatically collects basic organization details and uses the organization ID to create an alias. To change the alias, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Salesforce > Salesforce Orgs.
- 3. Select the necessary organization and click Rename.
- 4. In the **Rename Salesforce Alias** window, specify a new name that will be displayed in the **Salesforce Alias** column of the **Salesforce Orgs** tab, and click **Apply**.

${}^{\odot}$	Backup Res	tore Browse	Archive				Admini	istrator 🗸 🔘 Eng	glish 🖌 💭
$\langle \epsilon \rangle$) Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs	Databases	Encryption Keys					
Appli	ication		Q	+ Add Salesforce Organiz	ation 🧪 Edit 🖉	Connection 🛛 🐺 Rena	ame 📕 Chang	e Company 🛛 🗙 Del	ete
	Salesforce	Salesforce Alia	s	Company	Instance	Salesforce Edition	Salesforce	Salesforce ID	Databa 🕇
Ħ	Companies	Selected: 1 of 4							
25	Users and Roles	📃 🥑 Veeam - Ho	meoffice v2 (production)	Veeam	NA162	Developer Edition	mitionano.v	00D5e000002U	lab1_m
۲	Security	🗹 📀 Veeam - ma	b2 (sandbox)	Veeam	CS216	Base Edition	veax@veea	00D8C0000004f	Max2
1	Alerts	📃 🔮 Veeam - fsi	(sandbox)	Rename Salesforce	Alias	×	veax@veea	00D740000000M	<u> </u>
2	License	📃 🔮 Veeam - pa	rtial (sandbox)				veax@veea	00D4C0000001B	_
Х	About			New Alias: Veeam - E	Bank Connection				
					Apply	Cancel			

Changing Company

To assign an organization to another company, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Salesforce** Orgs.
- 3. Select the necessary organization, and click Change Company.
- 4. In the Change Company window:
 - a. Choose whether you want to assign the organization to an existing or to a new company.
 - If you want to add a new company to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and to re-assign the organization to this company, select the **Create new company** option, and specify a name for the new company.

• If you want to re-assign the organization to an existing company, select the **Select existing company** option, and choose the necessary company from the drop-down list.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be created as described in section Adding Companies.

b. Click Apply.

IMPORTANT

If a Salesforce organization is protected by a backup policy and its data is encrypted using an AWS KMS encryption key, you will not be able to re-assign the organization to any other company unless the related AWS KMS account is connected to this company. To work around the issue, you can either connect the AWS KMS account to the necessary company or edit the backup policy settings to choose a built-in encryption key instead of the AWS KMS key.

ß	Backup Res	store Browse	Archive				Admini	strator 🗸 🔘 Eng	glish 🖌 💭
\langle	• Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs	Databa	ses Encryption Keys					
Арр	lication			۹ + Add Salesforce Organiza	tion 🥜 Edit	Connection 🗔 Re	name 🙀 Chang	e Company 🛛 🗙 Del	ete
-	Salesforce	Salesforce Alias		Company	Instance	Salesforce Edition	Salesforce	Salesforce ID	Databa 🕇 🛛
ĦR	Companies	Selected: 1 of 4							
2%	Users and Roles	📃 🥑 Veeam - Hor	neoffice v2 (pro	Change Company		× <mark>lition</mark>	maxiivano.v	00D5e000002U	lab1_m
۲	Security	🖌 🥝 Veeam - max	(2 (sandbox)	Specify a new company name or se	lect from existing	g	max@veea	00D8C0000004f	Max2
10	Alerts	📃 🥑 Veeam - fsi (sandbox)				max@veea	00D740000000M	
9	License	📃 🥑 Veeam - par	tial (sandbox)	Create new company			max@veea	00D4C0000001B	_ ·
Х	About			JK orgs					
				Company name must be unique					
				Select existing company					
				Select company		~			
					Apply	Cancel			

Editing Connections

To authorize connections to Salesforce organizations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses the Salesforce Connected App specified either during the initial configuration or on the Connected App tab as described in section Changing Connected App Tokens. When you change the Connected App, connections to all Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce must be re-authorized. To do that, you can reconnect to organizations in backup policy settings or edit connection settings for the organizations.

IMPORTANT

If you enable enhanced domains in Salesforce, URLs of your Salesforce organizations will change and backup policies will fail to connect to Salesforce. To resolve the issue, edit the connection URL of the Salesforce organization when it is in the failed state. The link to change the URL will appear at the **Connect** step of the **Edit Salesforce organization** wizard.

For more information on enhanced domains, see Salesforce Documentation.

To edit connection settings for a Salesforce organization, do the following:

1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.

- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Salesforce** Orgs.
- 3. Select the necessary organization and click Edit Connection.

The Edit Salesforce organization wizard will open.

- 4. At the **Connect** step of the wizard:
 - a. To re-authorize connection to the organization, click **Re-authorize connection**. You will be redirected to the Salesforce authentication webpage.

On the Salesforce authentication webpage, enter credentials of the Salesforce user and click **Log in**. The specified user must be assigned permissions required for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to be able to perform backup and restore operations. For information, see Permissions.

NOTE

Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not store credentials of the Salesforce user used to log in to Salesforce. To authorize in Salesforce and access Salesforce data, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses the Connected App.

- b. [Applies only if you have enabled enhanced domains in Salesforce] To edit the connection URL of the Salesforce organization, click **Edit organization URL**, provide the new URL in the **Edit organization URL** window and click **Apply**.
- c. To verify whether permissions assigned to the specified user are enough to perform backup and restore operations, click the link in the **Verify permissions** section and wait for the check to complete. If any of the permissions are missing, you must grant them in the Salesforce console manually as described in Salesforce Documentation.

Backup Res	store
Edit Salesfo	rce organization GVCCorp (production)
Connect Assign a Company Summary	Log in with Salesforce Log in with Salesforce to authorize new Salesforce organization connection Image: Salesforce to authorize new Salesforce organization connection Image: Salesforce to authorize new Salesforce (sara.baker@company.mail) Image: Salesforce to authorize connection Image: Salesforce to to authorize (sara.baker@company.mail) Image: Salesforce to to authorize (sara.baker@company.mail) Image: Salesforce to authorize connection Image: Salesforce to authorize connection Image: Salesforce to to authorize connection Image: Salesforce to the to authorize connection Image: Salesforce tot to authorize connection Image:
	Next Save Cancel

- 5. At the **Assign a Company** step of the wizard, choose whether you want to re-assign the organization to another company:
 - If you want to add a new company to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and to re-assign the organization to this company, select the **Create new company** option, and specify a name for the new company.

 If you want to re-assign the organization to an existing company, select the Choose existing company option, and choose the necessary company from the drop-down list.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be created as described in section Adding Companies.

Backup Res	tore Browse
Edit Salesfo	rce organization Veeam (production)
Connect Assign a Company	Assign the Salesforce organization to a Company A company is a logical group that provides an additional level of security by controlling the scope of data available to the user and the alerts shown.
Summary	Create new company LA Company Company name should be unique Choose existing company Veeam
	Previous Next La Save Cancel

6. At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Save**.

Backup Res			Administrator 🗸		•			
Edit Salesforce organization Veeam (production)								
Connect	Review settings							
Assign a Company	Company:	LA Company						
Summary	User: Instance type:	maxi.v2@gmail.com Production						
	Edition: Salesforce Org ID:	Developer Edition						
	URL:	https://homeoffice22-dev-ed.my.salesforce.com						
	Storage:	/opt/vbsf/data/00e9f33e581919f7fc5b63a5243032b1140b12a84514ff2c56c8d918ae42ed03						
		Previous Save Cancel						

Removing Organizations

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove a Salesforce organization from the configuration database if you no longer need it.

IMPORTANT

You cannot remove a Salesforce organization that is currently protected by a backup policy. To remove the organization, delete the backup policy first as described in section Removing Backup Policies.

To remove an organization, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Salesforce** Orgs.
- 3. Select the necessary organization and click Delete.
- 4. In the **Delete Salesforce Connection** window, select the **Delete history for all restore jobs and archival policies** check box and click **Delete**.

NOTE

When you remove an organization, the backed-up data (data, metadata and files) is not deleted automatically. Veeam Backup for Salesforce continues storing the data for the security reasons. You can further use this data to restore objects and fields if you add the organization back to the management server. If you do not need the backed-up data, you can manually delete a database used to store the data of this organization from the server where the database is hosted and delete files and attachments from the location specified in the backup policy protecting the organization.



Managing Companies

Companies are logical groups that provide an additional level of security by controlling the scope of data available to the user and the alerts shown. Using companies, you can group Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and give users granular access only to organizations that belong to a specific company. For more information, see Adding Users.

A company is created automatically when you connect to a Salesforce organization during the initial configuration of the management server. You can also add companies manually, edit created companies, re-assign company organizations and remove companies.

ΤΙΡ

To track the disk space used by backed-up files of a Salesforce organization, check the **Local Storage Size** column on the **Companies** tab. To track the disk space used by the backed-up database of the Salesforce organization, check the **Database Size** column on the **Companies** tab.

Adding Companies

To add a new company, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Companies.
- 3. Click Add Company.
- 4. In the **Create Company** window, specify a name of a new company and click **Create**.

${}^{(2)}$	Backup Re	store Browse	Archive		Administrator	 ✓ (⊕) English ✓ (⊥)
$\langle \epsilon$) Exit Configuration	Companies				
Арр	lication	+ Add Company	🕼 Rename Company 🛛 🗙 De	lete		
	Salesforce	Company ↓		Salesforce Orgs	Local Storage Size	Database Size
H A	Companies	Veeam 1		1	6.86 MB	134.09 MB
2	Users and Roles		Create Company	v ×		
۲	Security					
R	Alerts		Company name			
9	License		Bonatti Company	/		
Х	About		Company name sho	uld be unique		
				Create Cancel		

Editing Companies

For each company, you can change the displayed name specified while adding the company to Veeam Backup for Salesforce:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Companies.
- 3. Select the necessary company and click Rename Company.
- 4. In the Rename Company window, specify a new name for the company and click Save.

${\bf B}$	Backup Re	store Browse	Archive		Administrato	r • (English • ()
$\langle \epsilon$	Exit Configuration	Companies				
Арр	lication	+ Add Company	🕼 Rename Company	X Delete		
-	Salesforce	Company \downarrow		Salesforce Orgs	Local Storage Size	Database Size
Ħn	Companies	Veeam 1		1	6.86 MB	134.09 MB
*	Users and Roles	Bonatti Company		Rename Company X	0 Bytes	0 Bytes
© # 9. %	Security Alerts License About			Company name Bueno Company Company name should be unique Save Cancel		

Removing Companies

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove a company from the configuration database if you no longer need it. When you remove a company, Veeam Backup for Salesforce verifies whether you have assigned any Salesforce organizations to this company, and if yes, suggests you to re-assign the organizations to another company.

IMPORTANT

When you remove a company and re-assign organizations to another company:

- Users that have company-wide permissions to the new company will automatically get permissions to access data of all re-assigned Salesforce organizations.
- Users that have permissions to access the removed company or any Salesforce organizations belonging to this company and do not have permissions to access the new company will not be assigned permissions to access new company automatically.
- Users that have the same roles in the removed and the new companies with permissions to access specific organizations within the company will retain the permissions to the same organizations. Consider the following example: User_1 has the Restore operator role for organization_1 that belongs to company_1 and the Restore operator role for organization_2 that belongs to company_2. You remove company_1 and re-assign organization_1 to company_2. In this case, user_1 will retain his permissions of the Restore operator role to organization_1 and organization_2 in company_2.

To remove a company, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Companies
- 3. Select the necessary company and click **Delete**.
- 4. [Applies only if any Salesforce organizations are assigned to the selected company] In the **Delete Company** window:
 - a. Choose whether you want to assign the organizations to an existing or to a new company:
 - If you want to re-assign organizations belonging to the removed company to an existing company, select the Assign to existing company option, and choose the necessary company from the drop-down list.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be created as described in section Adding Companies.

 If you want to add a new company to Veeam Backup for Salesforce and to re-assign organizations to this company, select the Assign to a new company option, and specify a name for the new company.
b. Click Assign and Delete.

Backup Res	store Browse	Archive			Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	Companies	🕼 Rename Company	X Delete			
 Salesforce 	Company ↓		Salesforce Orgs	Local Sto	rage Size	Database Size
🛱 Companies	Veeam 1	De	lete Company	×	6.86 MB	134.09 MB
 Users and Roles Security Alerts License About 	Bonatti Company	4	This company is not empty. Please choose where the related Salesforce organizations need to be reassigned. Assign to existing company Select Assign to a new company Olivia and Co. Company name should be unique Assign and Delete	ncel	0 Bytes	0 Bytes

Managing Databases

To store backed-up data and metadata of Salesforce organizations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses PostgreSQL databases. One database can be used to protect only one organization. You can add databases to Veeam Backup for Salesforce before or during the creation of backup policies.

Adding Database Connections

To connect to an existing database or to create a new database, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Salesforce > Databases.
- 3. Click Add Database.
- 4. Specify the following settings in the Add Database Connection window:
 - a. In the **PostgreSQL Server Connection** section, choose whether the database will be hosted on one of the PostgreSQL servers to which Veeam Backup for Salesforce is already connected or establish connection to a new PostgreSQL server.

If you chose to connect to a new server, you must configure the new connection settings:

- i. In the **PostgreSQL address** field, specify the DNS name or IP address of a PostgreSQL server that will host the database.
- ii. In the **Port** field, choose a network port that will be used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to connect to the PostgreSQL server. The default port number is 5432.
- iii. Use the **Username** and **Password** fields to provide credentials of the PostgreSQL user that will be used to access the database. The user must be assigned permissions required to create database schemas.
- b. In the **Create or connect to a database** section, specify the name of an existing database and connection label that will be further used as the database name displayed in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI.

If you enter the name of a database that does not exist yet, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically create a new database on the specified PostgreSQL server. However, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will be able to do this only if the user that will be used to access the database is assigned the *createdb* permission required to create databases in PostgreSQL — otherwise, you will have to create an empty database on the specified server manually as described in PostgreSQL Documentation.

IMPORTANT

Backed-up data of a Salesforce organization can be stored either in an empty database, or in any other database whose schema and organization ID match the schema and organization ID of the source database.

c. In the **Select company** section, choose a company that manages a Salesforce organization whose backed-up data and metadata you want to store in this database. For more information on companies, see Managing Companies.

d. Click Add.

B	Backup Res	store Browse	Archive			Administrat	or 🗸	English 🗸	
$\langle \epsilon$	Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs	Databases	Encryption Key	s				
App	lication	🕂 Add Database 🍃	Edit Connection	Add Database Con	nection	×	📄 🖬 Co	onfiguration Datab	base
	Salesforce	Connection Label ↑	Server	PostgreSQL Server C	onnection		Org ID	Salesfo	000
Ħn	Companies	Oefault	localhost	Use existing	vbsf@localhost:5555	~	00D74	Enterpr	
2	Users and Roles Security			New server conne	ection				
12	Alerts			PostgreSQL address:	node.pgsql-vbsf-b.prg.local				
9 ×	License			Port:	5432				
				Username:	admin				
				Password:					
				Create or connect to	a database				
				Database name:	olivia_dtbs				
				Connection label:	olivia_dtbs				
				Select company					
				Company	Bonatti Company	~			
						Add Cancel			

Editing Database Connections

For each PostgreSQL database, you can modify the configuration settings specified while adding the database connection:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce > Databases**.
- 3. Select the necessary database from the list and click Edit Connection.
- 4. In the **Edit Database Connection** window, you can change the connection label used as the database name displayed in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI, the server address, the network port and the database user. If you change credentials of the user, keep in mind that the new user must be assigned permissions required to create database schemas. For more information, see Permissions.

NOTE

You cannot edit connection settings for the Veeam Backup for Salesforce configuration database, but you can change user credentials used to connect to this database. To do that, click **Configuration Database** and provide new credentials in the **Edit Database Connection** window.

હ	Backup Res	tore Browse Arch	ive			🔺 Administrator 🗸 🌔	🕀 English 🗸	
\langle	Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs	Databases En	cryption Keys				
Арг	lication	🕂 Add Database 🛛 🧪 Edit (Connection 🗙 Re	emove			Configuration	Database
-	Salesforce	Connection Label ↑	Edit Database C	onnection	×	Salesforce Alias	Company	000
H a	Companies	ab_200_dev30	PostgreSQL Serve	er Connection		ab_dev30	AB_test	
25	Users and Roles	Sab_test_1	Connection label:	ar		-	AB_test	
Ø	Security	🔮 ar	Sonvor addross	and whet hide upper any signated		(P)RND - ar (sandbox) - te	(P)RND	
L.	Alerts	🔮 mdev30	Server address.	node.vosi-b.dev.prg.esx.cis.iocai		(P)RND - org01 (production)	(P)RND	
2	License	mdev3_org01	Port:	5432		(P)RND - org01 (production)	(P)RND	
Ж	About	📀 mxxsandbox	Database:	ar		Veeam - max (sandbox)	Veeam	
		🔮 partial	User credentials			partial (sandbox)	Max	
		preprod	ober er edentidals			(P)RND - preprod (sandbox)	(P)RND	
		rnd_prod	Username:	andy		(P)RND - Veeam RND1 (pr	(P)RND	
		🔮 test_p_db	Password:	•••••		Veeam - Veeam (producti	Veeam	
		test_tigrdb_999				(P)RND - org01 (production)	(P)RND	
				Save	Cancel			

Removing Database Connections

You can remove a database from Veeam Backup for Salesforce if you no longer need it. However, the database will not be deleted from the host server — it can be further reconnected to the same or to another Veeam Backup for Salesforce server and used to protect the same organization. If you do not need the data stored in the database anymore, you can delete it from the host server manually.

NOTE

You cannot remove a database that is currently used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to protect a Salesforce organization. If you want to remove the database, connect to another database in the backup policy settings.

To remove a database from Veeam Backup for Salesforce, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Databases**.
- 3. Select the necessary database and click Remove.
- 4. In the **Remove Database Connection** window, acknowledge the operation and click **Remove**.



Managing Users

Veeam Backup for Salesforce can be fully managed by a single built-in administrator account created during initial configuration. However, it is recommended that you configure an identity provider (IdP), create a user with the *Administrator* role – and then use the configured IdP to access Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

User Roles and Permissions

Veeam Backup for Salesforce controls access to its functionality with the help of user roles and scopes. A role defines what operations users can perform and a scope defines to which companies and Salesforce organizations the permissions apply.

There are 4 user roles that you can assign to user groups and users working with Veeam Backup for Salesforce:

- Administrator can perform all configuration actions, backup and restore operations. This role gives a user access to the full product functionality (except for the IdP configuration).
- **Backup Operator** can create and manage backup policies, manage protected data and perform all restore and archival operations. You can limit access to companies and Salesforce organizations for users when assigning this role. For more information, see Adding Users.
- **Restore Operator** can only perform restore operations. You can limit access to companies and Salesforce organizations for users when assigning this role. For more information, see Adding Users.
- Viewer can monitor backup and restore processes without performing any operations. You can limit access to companies and Salesforce organizations for users when assigning this role. For more information, see Adding Users.

The following table describes the functionality available to users with different roles in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce UI. Note that users with *Backup Operator*, *Restore Operator* and *Viewer* roles assigned will have the described permissions only within the scope specified when adding these users.

Tab	Functionality	Administrator	Backup Operator	Restore Operator	Viewer
Backup	Managing backup policies, performing backup	Full	Full Viewing backup policies and sessions		Viewing backup policies and sessions
	Downloading backup session logs	Full	Full	-	-
Restore	Managing restore jobs, performing restore	Full	Full	Full	Viewing restore jobs and sessions
	Downloading restore session logs	Full	Full	Full	-
Browse	Viewing backed-up data, performing restore	Full	Full	Full	-
Archive Managing archival Full Full Full policies, performing archiving		Full	Viewing archival policies and sessions	Viewing archival policies and sessions	

Tab	Functionality	Administrator	Backup Operator	Restore Operator	Viewer
	Downloading archival session logs	Full	Full	Full	-
Configuration					
Salesforce	Managing companies	Full	-	-	-
	Managing Salesforce organizations	Full	Adding and viewing Salesforce organizations	-	-
	Managing databases	Full	Full	-	-
	Managing encryption keys	Full	Full	-	-
	Managing data masking templates	Full	-	-	-
Users and Roles	Managing users	Full	-	-	-
Security	Managing Connected App	Full	-	-	-
	Managing identity provider	Local administrator only	-	-	-
	Managing key management service	Full	Full	-	-
	Managing audit trail	Full	-	-	-
Alerts	Managing notifications	Full	Full*	-	-

Tab	Functionality	Administrator	Backup Operator	Restore Operator	Viewer
	Managing connection settings	Full	-	-	-
License	Managing license	Full	Viewing license information	-	-
About	Downloading product logs	Full	-	-	-
	Configuring advanced settings	Full	-	-	-

*Does not apply to alerts created for the *License* and *File storage size* types of events. For more information on event types, see Managing Alerts.

Adding Users

To add a user or group of users, do the following:

- 1. Configure IdP settings as described in section Configuring IdP and SSO Settings.
- 2. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 3. Navigate to Users and Roles > Users.
- 4. Click Add User.

You will be redirected to the authorization page of the configured identity provider. If you have not logged in yet, log in to the identity provider portal. After that, you will be redirected to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce page as an authorized user.

NOTE

If you connected a Microsoft Entra ID as an identity provider in Veeam Backup for Salesforce and want to add a group of users, make sure that all users in the group have an email in the connected Microsoft Entra ID. Otherwise, they will not be able to log in to the product.

- 5. In the Assign Roles window:
 - a. Click **Select user or group** to choose the necessary IdP user or group of users.
 - b. Use the **Role** drop-down list to select a user role that will be assigned to the selected user or group of users. For more information on user roles, see User Roles and Permissions.

If a user belongs to multiple groups, the user will inherit the most privileged role from all the roles assigned to these groups.

c. Use the **Company** and **Organization** drop-down lists to specify the scope of resources to which the selected user or group of users will have access in Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

NOTE

You cannot limit the scope of resources for the *Administrator* role. By default, this role provides access to all companies and Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

- d. Click Assign Role.
- e. Perform steps b-d for each role that you want to assign to the selected user or group of users.

Make sure that the permissions of the assigned roles do not overlap each other. Otherwise, one role may override another, and Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display a warning.

TIP

You can unassign roles from the selected user or group of users. To do that, click the cross button in the necessary row of the user roles table.

f. Click Save.

Assign Roles Exit Configuration Specify a user or a group and assign it one or more roles in companies and organizations Application Salesforce Image: Companies Role: Company: Organization: All organizations Security Administrator Security Administrator License Restore operator Viewer Company Organization Viewer	LL)
Exit Configuration Specify a user or a group and assign it one or more roles in companies and organizations Application User or group: ACS AcS Companies Role: Companies Backup operator Administrator Administrator Administrator Backup operator Company Organization Company Organization All organization Viewer	
Application User or group: ACS AcS AcS AcS Companies Role: Company: Organization: All organizations Administrator Alerts Backup operator Company Organization Company Organizations Assign Role Ver Reason Company Organization Ver Reason	
Role: Companies Companies Role: Company: Organization: Lusers and Roles Backup operator Administrator Administrator Administrator License Restore operator Viewer	
Backup operator All companies All companies All companies Ver Reason Security Administrator Administrator Image: Company Organization Image: Company Organization License Restore operator Company Organization Image: Company Organization License Restore operator Viewer	
Security Administrator Adents Backup operator License Restore operator X About Viewer	000
Backup operator Company Organization License Restore operator Image: Company	
kicense Restore operator Xiewer Viewer	
X About Viewer	
No access	
Save Cancel	

Editing Users

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to edit settings of users added to the configuration database, activate and deactivate users.

IMPORTANT

If you change IdP settings, all users added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce using these settings will become inactive. If you want to enable access for these users, choose the previously configured identity provider and save the settings. For more information on configuring an identity provider, see Configuring IdP and SSO Settings.

Editing Local Administrator

You cannot modify settings of the local administrator created during the initial configuration from the Web UI. You can only reset the password of the administrator using the terminal. To do that, connect to the machine running Veeam Backup for Salesforce using SSH, run the /opt/vbsf/reset_password.sh script, provide and confirm the new password. The password must contain uppercase and lowercase Latin letters and special characters (!@#\$%^&`~*()_-=+[]{};'\:\"|,./<>?). The minimum length of the password is 8 characters.

Editing IdP Users

You can edit permissions assigned to users and user groups in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. To do that:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Users and Roles > Users.
- 3. Select the necessary user or group of users, and click Edit.
- 4. In the Edit User Settings window, do one of the following:
 - $\circ~$ To unassign a role from the user or group of users, click the cross button in the necessary row of the user roles table.
 - To assign a new role to the user or group of users, follow the instructions provided in Adding Users.

The changes will immediately apply after you finish working with the wizard. This will result on user access to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce functionality. However, all backup policies, archival policies and restore jobs started and scheduled by this user will not be affected.

NOTE

If you rename a group of users in Microsoft Azure Entra ID, Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not automatically update the record in the configuration database. To update the group name in the product Web UI, select the group, click **Edit** and re-save the record.

(\mathcal{L})	Backup R	estore Browse	Archive			Administr	ator 🗸 🌐 English	•
Æ) Exit Configuration	Assign Roles					×	
C)	Specify a user or a grou	p and assign it one or mor	e roles in companies ar	id organizations		_	
App	ication	User or group:	🦧 Re-a	authorize connection				
	Salesforce							
Ħn	Companies	Role:	Company:		Organization:			
*	Users and Roles	Backup operator	Veeam 1	*	Veeam 1 - nd3 (sandbox)	Y 🍰 Assign Role	ive Reason	000
۲	Security							
	Alerts	Role	Company	0	rganization			
y y	License	Backup operator	Veeam 1	Ve	eeam 1 - nd3 (sandbox)	:	Х м	
X	About						~	
						Save Ca	ancel	

Removing Users

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove users and user groups from the configuration database:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Users and Roles > Users.
- 3. Select the necessary user or group and click **Delete**.
- 4. In the **Remove User** window, click **Remove** to acknowledge the operation.

The changes will immediately apply after you click **Remove**. However, all backup policies, archival policies and restore jobs started and scheduled by this user will not be affected.

B	Backup Res	ore Browse Archive				Administrator	♥ () English ♥	
\langle	• Exit Configuration	Users						
Арр	lication	Role: All 🗸 Filter by te	ext Q					
-	Salesforce	🕂 Add User 🧪 Edit 🗙 Delete 🔒 Dea	activate					
H R	Companies							
24	Users and Roles	Username † Role N	Name Email	Last Sessi II	DP	Scope	Inactive Reason	000
۲	Security	Selected: 1 of 1						
10	Alerts	✓ aleks.eigo Restore operator T	fest Test aleks.eigo	— Si	alesforce	1 organizat	-	
2	License							
×	About	Remove User			×			
		Are you	sure you want to remove the se	lected user?	_			
			R	Cance	el			

Managing Data Masking Templates

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to mask sensitive information (such as user names, passwords, credit card numbers and so on) when restoring data to a sandbox. To do that, the product provides a default data masking template that you can use as is or customize for your specific needs.

When you instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to apply a template while performing a restore operation, the restored data is replaced with randomly generated values so that this information can be shared without compromising confidentiality.

NOTE

Only users assigned the *Administrator* role can manage data masking templates in Veeam Backup for Salesforce, while users assigned the *Backup Operator* and *Restore Operator* roles can use these templates when restoring records and field values.

Adding Data Masking Templates

To add a new data masking template, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce > Data Masking Templates**.
- 3. Click New Template and complete the Add Data Masking Template wizard:
 - a. At the **Name** step, specify a name for the new template. The maximum length of the template name is 100 characters.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	Administrator 🗸 🛞 English 🖌 💭
Add Data M	asking Template	
Name Organization	Data Masking Template Name Type in name for the data masking template. Template name:	
Data Summary	Template 01	
		Cancel

b. At the **Organization** step, choose a Salesforce organization for which you want to create the template.

For an organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Managing Salesforce Organizations and must have a backup.

Backup Re	estore Browse Archive	Administrator 🗸 🛞 English 🖌 🔔
Add Data M	Masking Template	
Name Organization Data Summary	Select Salesforce Organization Data Masking Template can be configured for Salesforce organizations with completed data backup Salesforce Organization: Veeam RND1 - nd5 (sandbox)	5.
	Previous	Next Lancel

c. At the **Data** step, modify the default template to configure data masking rules for objects and fields.

After you modify the template, you can generate an example output to check whether the masking settings are configured properly. To do that, click **Preview**.

TIP

If you want to modify the default template, edit the mask.template.default parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	(Administrator • 🕀 English •
Add Data M	asking Template		
Name Organization Data	Data Add fields which should be masked during restore to non-production organization (PII) fields are included in the template by default. Image: Comparison of the template by default fields Image: Comparison of the template by default fields Image: Comparison of template by default fields	ion. Personally identifiable	
Summary	Object: Field: Contact (Contact) V Email (Email)	Data masking rule:	Edit 🗙
	Contact (Contact)	✓ First Name ✓	Edit 🗙
	Contact (Contact)	✓ Last Name ✓	Edit 🗙
	Contact (Contact)	✓ First Name ✓	Edit 🗙
	Contact (Contact)	♥ Phone ♥	Edit 🗙
	Contact (Contact)	♥ Phone ♥	Edit 🗙
	Previo	JS Next Cancel	

d. At the **Summary** step, review configuration information and click **Finish**.

Backup Res	tore Browse Are	hive	(💄 Administrator 🗸	English	•
Add Data M	asking Template					
Name Organization	Summary Template configuration is co	mplete. You can browse back to adjust data masking rules.				
Data	Description					
Summary	Template name: Salesforce Organization:	Template 01 (P)RND - (P)RND (production)				
	Data masking rules					
	Number of selected fields:	1				
			Previous Finish	Cancel		

Editing Data Masking Templates

For each data masking template, you can modify settings configured while creating the template:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Salesforce > Data Masking Templates.
- 3. Select the necessary template and click Edit.
- 4. Complete the Edit Data Masking Template wizard:
 - a. To provide a new name for the template, follow the instructions provided in section Adding Data Masking Templates (step 3a).
 - b. To modify the masking rules configured in the template, follow the instructions provided in section Adding Data Masking Templates (step 3c).

If you want to upload additional fields that were originally included in the default template, click **Upload Default Template**.

c. At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configuration information and click **Finish** to confirm the changes.

Backup Res	store Browse Archi	ve			🔺 Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs Da	tabases Encrypti	on Keys Data M	asking Templates		
Application	Company: All	~	+ New Template	🗡 Edit 🗙 Deletete 📄 F	Preview	
 Salesforce 	Data Masking Templ	Summary	Company	Salesforce Alias	Created By	Modified By
Companies	Selected: 1 of 4					
Users and Roles	PII Fields	5 masked fields	(P)RND	(P)RND - (P)RND (prod	admin	admin
Security	✓ 123	1 masked field	(P)RND	(P)RND - ar (sandbox)	admin	admin
Alerts	acc1	1 masked field	(P)RND	(P)RND - ar (sandbox)	admin	admin
License	YP template	1 masked field	(P)RND	(P)RND - ar (sandbox)	admin	admin
🗙 About						

Removing Data Masking Templates

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove a data masking template from the configuration database if you no longer need it.

To remove a template, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Salesforce > Data Masking Templates.
- 3. Select the necessary template and click **Delete**.
- 4. In the **Remove Data Masking Template** window, acknowledge the operation and click **Remove**.

ຝ	Backup Res	store Browse Archive				Administrator	 ✓ (⊕) English ✓ (⊥)
$\langle \epsilon$) Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs Data	bases Encrypti	ion Keys Data M	lasking Templates		
Арр	lication	Company: All	~	+ New Template	🧪 Edit 🛛 🗙 Delete	Preview	
	Salesforce	Data Masking Templ	Summary	Company	Salesforce Alias	Created By	Modified By
Ħ	Companies	Selected: 1 of 4					
2	Users and Roles	PII Fields	Delete Data Mach	ving Tomplato	~	pd admin	admin
۲	Security	✓ 123	Delete Data Mask	ting remplate	^	() admin	admin
1	Alerts	acc1	Are you sure Template?	e you want to delete the s	elected Data Masking	<) admin	admin
9	License	YP template				<) admin	admin
×	About				Remove Cancel		
					2		

Configuring Security Settings

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to change Salesforce Connected App used to authenticate with Salesforce and get access to resources that will be protected, configure single sign-on (SSO) authentication, and view information on various product events.

Changing Connected App Tokens

Salesforce Connected App allows Veeam Backup for Salesforce to authenticate with Salesforce and get access to resources that will be protected. You can create the Connected App in any Salesforce organization. To learn how to create the Connected App, see this Veeam KB article.

IMPORTANT

You can protect multiple Salesforce organizations using a single Veeam Backup for Salesforce installation. However, due to the Salesforce Connected App limit of 5 authorizations per client, authorization issues may occur when you have several product installations leveraging the same Connected App. That is why it is recommended that you create a dedicated Connected App for each product deployment.

For more information on Salesforce OAuth Authorization Flows and Connected Apps, see Salesforce Documentation.

During the initial configuration, you are prompted to provide the Connected App OAuth tokens that are further used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce for the authentication process. However, you can change these tokens later in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI.

IMPORTANT

If you change the Connected App tokens, you must re-authorize all connections to Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce. Otherwise, all backup and restore operations will fail.

To re-authorize connections to Salesforce organizations, either navigate to **Configuration** > **Salesforce** > **Salesforce Orgs** and edit connections as described in section Editing Organizations, or navigate to **Backup**, launch the **Edit Backup Policy** wizard for each created backup policy, and follow instructions provided in Step 2. Configure Connection to Salesforce Organization.

Changing Tokens

To change the OAuth tokens, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Security** > **Connected App**.
- 3. Click **Change Connected App Tokens**, and then click **Proceed** in the **Confirm Operation** window to acknowledge the operation.
- 4. Specify the type of the Salesforce organization where your Connected App is created.
- 5. Use the **Consumer key** and **Consumer secret** fields to provide the tokens obtained when creating the app.
- 6. Click Connect.

NOTES

If you have created a new Connected App, consider the following:

- The Connected App must be assigned the *Full access (full)* and *Perform requests at any time (refresh_token, offline_access)* OAuth scopes. For more information on OAuth scopes in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If you have configured Salesforce as an identity provider in Veeam Backup for Salesforce, the *access unique user identifiers (openid)* OAuth scope must be granted to the new Connected App. Otherwise, you will not be able to change the Connected App tokens.
- The callback URL specified in the Connected App settings must match the Veeam Backup for Salesforce server address. You can copy the address in the **Setting up Salesforce Connected App** section.
- It takes up to 10 minutes for newly created OAuth tokens to become active.

$\textcircled{\basis}$	Backup	Restore Bi	rowse Archi	/e			🔔 Administrator 🗸	🕀 English 🥆	· ①
$\langle \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \! \!$	Exit Configuratio	on Connect	ted App Sing	le Sign-On Key	Management Service	Audit			
Applic Applic R A A A A A A A A A A A A A	ation 5alesforce Companies Users and Roles	Salesforce Salesforce Co create a dedi handling of to Please g	e Connected App onnected App allows t icated Connected App tokens and do not sha onnected App is now go to the Salesforce to	he product to integrate w and save security tokens re or transmit tokens ove onfigured, but connection b and re-authorize the co	ith Salesforce using APIs, Sal into the product configurati r the internet. Ins to some Salesforce organi nnected organizations with t	esforce administrator needs to on settings. Please ensure secure zations need attention. he backup users credentials.			
1	Security	Verify with Sa	alesforce domain:						
R.	Alerts	Production	1		~				
9	License	Salesforce lo	gin domain:						
*	About	https://logi	in.salesforce.com/						
		Consumer ke	ey:						
		5MVG9DRE	gfgiBqN9WksZK_YJzSI	31_hLB2QP78nFvjpHJLujxi	mVAFaE0hTehjzI(
		Consumer se	ecret:						
		Connect							
		Setting up	o Salesforce Conn	ected App					
		When setting exactly match	g the Connected App ih the server address.	n Salesforce, please pay at	tention to the Callback URL	details. Callback URL must			
		You can copy	y and paste this Callba	ck URL into the settings:					
		https://171	.55.52.175		🖞 Copy to Clipboard				
		😢 Read KB	on Salesforce Connec	ted App					

Configuring IdP and SSO Settings

Veeam Backup for Salesforce supports single sign-on (SSO) authentication using Microsoft Entra ID and Salesforce based on the OAuth 2.0 protocol. SSO authentication allows users to follow the corporate security policy and log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce using the corporate identity provider (IdP).

IMPORTANT

If you change IdP settings, all users added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce using these settings will become inactive. If you want to enable access for these users, choose the previously configured identity provider and save the settings.



Configuring IdP Settings Using Microsoft Entra ID

To configure IdP settings using Microsoft Entra ID, you must first create an application for Veeam Back up for Salesforce on the Microsoft Identify Platform. To learn how to register an application with the Microsoft Identity Platform, see Microsoft Docs.

When creating the application, consider the following:

- The following API permissions must be granted to the application:
 - o GroupMember.Read.All
 - o User.Read
 - o User.Read.All
- The redirect URI added to the application must match the management server FQDN that you use to access the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI. To make sure that you are adding the correct URI, switch to the **Configuration** page and navigate to **Security** > **Single Sign-On**. The address will be displayed in the **Callback URL** field.

Configuring IdP Settings on Veeam Backup for Salesforce Side

To configure the IdP settings on the Veeam Backup for Salesforce side, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Security** > **Single Sign-On**.
- 3. Set the **Enable single sign-on** toggle to *On*.

- 4. From the Identity Provider drop-down list, select Microsoft Entra ID.
- 5. In the **Application ID** field, provide the *Application ID* of the registered application. You can find the ID on the app registration **Overview** pane on the Microsoft Identify Platform.
- 6. In the **Directory ID** field, specify the *Directory ID* of the registered application. You can find the ID on the app registration **Overview** pane on the Microsoft Identify Platform.
- 7. In the **Client secret** field, enter the value of a client secret created in the specified application.

Keep in mind that you can see and copy a client secret value only when creating it. Otherwise, you will not be able to retrieve the value. To learn how to create client secrets, see Microsoft Docs.

8. Click **Save**. You will be redirected to the Microsoft authentication page. Enter the credentials of the Microsoft user and log in to the application. Grant admin consent to the application if required. To learn how to do that, see Microsoft Docs.

As soon as the IdP settings are successfully configured, you can start adding users to Veeam Backup for Salesforce. Consider that the Veeam Backup for Salesforce session timeout is 60 minutes. If the session is expired, you must log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce using the local administrator credentials once again, and continue adding users for the next 60 minutes.

逊) Backup R	estore Browse Archive	Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🖌 💭
\langle	Exit Configuration	Connected App Single Sign-On Key Management Service Audit	
Арр	lication	Save Do not forget to save the changes	
-	Salesforce	Enable single sign-on: 💽 On 🕕	
H H	Companies	Identity Provider:	
2	Users and Roles	Microroft Entrol D	
۲	Security		
2	Alerts	Application ID:	
2	License	1516czcsscs2-15gd-kfd5-2349hav152csxbxv	
×	About	Directory ID:	
^		13dcsasvasfd-8962-sf25-kkmlgjnc2525sdsal	
		Client secret:	
		abdgac7Q-defghsdcsaijklmnqrs0t123d56789	
		Callback URL:	
		https://172.24.29.51	
		I Verify	

Configuring IdP Settings Using Salesforce

You can configure Salesforce as an OpenID Connect identity provider that will allow users of your Salesforce organizations to log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.

To be able to use Salesforce as an identity provider, you must grant the access unique user identifiers (openid) OAuth scope to the Connected App used to authorize access to all Salesforce organizations protected by this Veeam Backup for Salesforce installation. For more information on the Connected App, see Changing Connected App Tokens.

NOTE

If you have an allowlist for Connected Apps configured in Salesforce, make sure that the product is included in that list and users are granted access to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Connected App. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.

Configuring IdP Settings on Veeam Backup for Salesforce Side

To configure the IdP settings on the Veeam Backup for Salesforce side, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Security** > **Single Sign-On**.
- 3. Set the Enable single sign-on toggle to On.
- 4. From the Identity Provider drop-down list, select *Salesforce*.
- 5. From the **Login domain** field, choose one of the following:
 - o If you want to authorize users of Salesforce production organizations only, select *Production*.
 - If you want to authorize users of Salesforce sandbox organizations only, select *Sandbox*.
 - If you want to authorize users of a specific Salesforce organization hosted on a custom domain, select *Custom*.

If you select the **Custom** option, you must also specify the organization domain name.

6. Click **Save**. You will be redirected to the Salesforce authentication webpage.

On the Salesforce authentication webpage, enter credentials of the Salesforce user and click **Log in**. The specified user must be granted permissions to read user data.

As soon as the IdP settings are successfully configured, you can start adding users to Veeam Backup for Salesforce. Consider that the Veeam Backup for Salesforce session time out is 60 minutes. If the session is expired, you must log in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce using the local administrator credentials once again, and continue adding users for the next 60 minutes.

IMPORTANT

If you enabled a Salesforce organization as an identity provider, do not use the integration user account to sign in to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as it will cause the backup session token to expire after 5 login attempts. Backup jobs will fail with the expired Salesforce token message because the authorization token is revoked by Salesforce. You will have to reauthorize the connection to the Salesforce organization.

$\underline{\mathcal{S}}$	Backup Res	ore Browse Archive	🔺 Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🗸 💭
$\langle\!\langle$	Exit Configuration	Connected App Single Sign-On Key Management Service	e Audit
Арр	lication	Save Do not forget to save the changes	
-	Salesforce	Enable single sign-on: 🚺 On 🕕	
Ë	Companies	Identity Provider:	
2	Users and Roles	Nicrosoft Entro ID	
۲	Security	WILL OSDICETICATO	
P	Alerts	Application ID:	
0	License	1516czcsscs2-15gd-kfd5-2349hav152csxbxv	
10	4 h = 1 h	Directory ID:	
~	About	13dcsasvasfd-8962-sf25-kkmlgjnc2525sdsal	
		Client secret:	
		abdgac7Q-defghsdcsaijklmnqrs0t123d56789	
		Callback URL:	
		https://172.24.29.51	Copy to Clipboard
		 Verify 	

Configuring Encryption Settings

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to encrypt backed -up data stored in PostgreSQL databases and file repositories to protect your information from unauthorized access. To do that, the product leverages a cryptographic algorithm to transform data to an unreadable format using an organization-specific data key that is enciphered with one of the following master keys:

- An original (built-in) Veeam Backup for Salesforce master encryption key that is automatically generated by Veeam Backup for Salesforce upon installation.
- A native Amazon Web Services Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer-managed master encryption key.

IMPORTANT

- Shared AWS KMS keys are not supported in Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1.
- If an AWS KMS key is used to encrypt backed-up data, DO NOT delete this key from the AWS KMS account. Otherwise, you will not be able to decrypt the encrypted data.

Managing AWS KMS Connections

To encrypt data using an AWS KMS master key, you must first connect to an AWS account that manages this key. To learn how to do that, follow the instructions provided in section Adding Connections.

Before you connect to an AWS account, check the following prerequisites:

- Make sure that the IAM user that will be used to perform data encryption has all the required permissions.
- Make sure that you have created the AWS KMS master key in the AWS account. For more information, see AWS Documentation.
- Make sure that you have created an access key ID and a secret access key that will be used to authenticate requests to the AWS account. Keep in mind that you can see and copy this ID and key only when creating an access key pair. For more information, see AWS Documentation.

Adding Connections

To connect to an AWS account, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Security > Key Management Service.
- 3. Click Add KMS Connection.
- 4. In the Connect to Key Management Service window:
 - a. In the Access Key Id and Secret Access Key fields, specify an access key pair that will be used to authenticate requests to the AWS account managing this master key.
 - b. From the **Company** drop-down list, select a company to which you want to connect the AWS account.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be created as described in section Adding Companies.

c. Click Save.

${\bf B}$	Backup Res	store Browse	Archive		Administrator 🗸 🛞 English 🖌 💭
\langle	Exit Configuration	Connected App	Single Sign-On Ke	ey Management Service Audit	
Арр	lication	Company: Veeam RNE)1 👻 Key Ma	nagement Service: Filter by text Q	
	Salesforce Companies	+ Add KMS Connection	🧷 Edit Connection	K Remove Connection	
25	Users and Roles	Company Name	Connect to Key Manage	ement Service X	Connection Status
© \$	Security Alerts	No data	Key Management Service:	AWS Key Management Service 🔹	
2	License		Connection details		
Х	About		Access Key Id:	AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAGKLPONBF	
			Secret Access Key:	·····	
			Company		
			Company:	Veeam RND1	
				Save Cancel	

Removing Connections

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to remove a connection to an AWS account from Veeam Backup for Salesforce if you no longer need it. To do that:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Security** > **Encryption**.
- 3. Select the necessary connection in the Key Management Service section and click Remove Connection.
- 4. In the **Remove** window, acknowledge the operation and click **Remove**.

IMPORTANT

You cannot remove a connection to an AWS account whose key is currently used by any backup policy to encrypt data. Edit the backup policy settings to choose another encryption key – and then try removing the connection again.

$\textcircled{\basis}$	Backup Res	tore Browse			Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🖌	
$\langle\!$	Exit Configuration	Connected App Single	Sign-On Key Management S	ervice Audit		
Applic	cation	Company: Veeam.RND1	 Key Management Service: 	Filter by text Q		
•	Salesforce	La time e la Ale				
Ħa	Companies	T Add KMS Connection / Ed	bit Connection 🗙 <u>Remove Connect</u>	lon		
25	Users and Roles	Company Name	Account	Key Management Service	Connection Status	
۲	Security	Veeam.RND1	121030839989	AWS	🛇 Valid	
<u>R</u>	Alerts					
2	License					
х	About					

Managing Encryption Keys

If your backed-up data is encrypted with a built-in encryption key, it is recommended that you download the data encryption key to your workstation. Otherwise, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will be not able to decrypt the data in case you migrate the product to another workstation.

To download the built-in encryption key, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page
- 2. Navigate to **Salesforce** > **Encryption Keys**.
- 3. Choose the necessary key and click **Download Key**.

TIP

After you download the built-in encryption key to your workstation, you will become able to decrypt data using this key in case of migration. To do that, click **Upload Key**. Keep in mind that you can decrypt only those records and files that were encrypted using the downloaded key.

ຝ	Backup Re	store Browse	Archive			Adminis	trator 🗸 🖨 English 🖌 💭	
\langle	Exit Configuration	Salesforce Orgs	Companies Da	atabases Encry	/ption Keys			
Арр	olication	Company: All		✓ <u>▶</u> Download	<u>i Key</u> 🏠 Upload Key			
	Salesforce	Company Name	Key Management Servi	Encryption Key	Key Status	Salesforce Alias	Database Connection Label	
Ħ	Companies	Veeam RND1	Built-in encryption	1d913ef	 Data is not encrypted 	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sand	Default	
2	Users and Roles							1
Ø	Security							
P	Alerts							
2	License							
×	About							

Viewing Audit Trail

The **Audit** tab displays a trail of all security-sensitive events such as logging in, database creation, connecting to Salesforce organizations, backup and restore operations, and so on. You can use this information for management and monitoring purposes.

To track Veeam Backup for Salesforce events, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to **Security** > **Audit**.

NOTES

- Dates in the **Event** column are always displayed in the following format: [yyyy-mm-dd].
- All audit log files are automatically saved to the /var/log/vbsf/audit/vbsf audit.log file.
- All audit log files older than 1 year are automatically removed by the product.

Backup Rest	tore Browse	Archive		Administr	ator 🗸 🖨 English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	Connected App	Single Sign-On	Key Management Service Audit		
Application	Event	۹	User IP Q User Name	۹	Last 7 days
Salesforce Gompanies	Date ↓	Туре	Event	User IP	User
Users and Roles	6/19/24, 11:45:53 AM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
Security	6/18/24, 4:11:20 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
Alerts	6/18/24, 2:26:53 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
2 License	6/18/24, 1:11:34 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
X About	6/17/24, 11:49:36 AM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/17/24, 10:49:30 AM	User	Query data. Organization: 1. Object: Account. Fields: Id,SystemModstamp,Nam	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/14/24, 1:01:11 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/14/24, 12:00:49 PM	User	Query data. Organization: 1. Object: Account. Fields: Id,SystemModstamp,Nam	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/14/24, 12:00:47 PM	User	Query data. Organization: 1. Object: Account. Fields: Id, SystemModstamp,Nam	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 6:23:38 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 4:08:56 PM	User	User logout	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:51:56 PM	User	Restore job created: #1 - Restore records [ID: 8]	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:41:00 PM	User	Restore job change: Options. Restore records [ID: 7]	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:40:58 PM	User	Restore job change: Files. Restore records [ID: 7]	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:40:57 PM	User	Restore job change: Hierarchy. Restore records [ID: 7]	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:40:57 PM	User	Restore job change: Data. Restore records [ID: 7]	172.25.164.23	admin
	6/12/24, 2:40:54 PM	User	Query data. Organization: 1. Object: Account. Fields: Id, SystemModstamp, Nam	172.25.164.23	admin

Managing Alerts

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to create alerts to notify you about important events, state changes and issues. Users assigned the *Administrator* role can manage alerts for all companies and Salesforce organizations in Veeam Backup for Salesforce, while users assigned the *Backup Operator* role can manage alerts only for companies and Salesforce organizations within their specified scope of permissions.

You can create alerts for the following types of events:

- **Backup policy** an alert created for this type of events is triggered by a specific backup session status. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case any of the backup policies configured for your Salesforce organizations complete successfully, complete with warnings or complete with errors.
- **Restore job** an alert created for this type of events is triggered by a specific restore session status. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case any of the restore jobs configured for your Salesforce organizations complete successfully, complete with warnings or complete with errors.
- **Database connection** an alert created for this type of events is triggered when the connection to a PostgreSQL database is lost.
- Salesforce connection an alert created for this type of events is triggered when the connection to Salesforce is lost.
- License an alert created for this type of events is triggered when the license installed on the management server acquires a specific status. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case the license check completes successfully, completes with warnings or completes with errors.

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce automatically checks the license on a weekly basis. You can also do it manually as described in section Viewing License Information.

- File storage size an alert created for this type of events is triggered when the specified space usage threshold is breached. By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce automatically checks the storage space usage on a daily basis at 9:00 UTC.
- Archival policy an alert created for this type of events is triggered by a specific archival session status. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case any of the archival policies configured for your Salesforce organizations complete successfully, complete with warnings or complete with errors.
- **Encryption job** an alert created for this type of events is triggered by a specific encryption session status. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case any of the encryption jobs configured for your Salesforce organizations complete successfully, complete with warnings or complete with errors.
- Data change an alert created for this type of events is triggered when Veeam Backup for Salesforce detects any changes in protected data. You can choose whether you want to receive notifications in case new records are added to any of the backup policies configured for your Salesforce organizations, or any of the existing records are updated or deleted from Salesforce.

NOTE

Administrators and Backup Operators can both create and view alerts for all types of events, while Restore Operators and Viewers can only view the created alerts. However, Administrators and Backup Operators can also limit this functionality by assigning specific user roles.

Configuring Notification Settings

To receive notifications on created alerts, you must configure notification settings. You can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send notifications by email and to specific Slack channels and chats.

Configuring Email Settings

To configure mail server settings, choose whether you want to employ basic or modern authentication for your mail server.

Using Basic Authentication

To employ the basic authentication to connect to your mail server:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Alerts > Connection Settings.
- 3. Set the **Email alerts** toggle to *On*.
- 4. From the **Connection settings** drop-down list, select *SMTP server (basic authentication)*.
- 5. In the **SMTP server** field, specify a DNS name or an IP address of the SMTP server. All email notifications (including test messages) will be sent by this SMTP server.
- 6. In the **Port** field, you can change a communication port for SMTP traffic. The default SMTP port is 25.
- 7. In the **Timeout** field, specify a timeout for the connection attempt to the SMTP server. The default timeout is 1,000 seconds.
- 8. In the **Sender** field, enter an email address of the notification sender. This email address will be displayed in the **From** field of the notifications.
- 9. If your SMTP server requires authentication, select the **Require authentication** check box and specify user credentials in the **Username** and **Password** fields.
- 10. To save the settings, click Save.

TIP

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to send a test message to check whether you have configured all settings correctly. To do that, click **Send Test Email** and specify an email address to which the email will be sent.

Using Modern Authentication

To employ the modern authentication to connect to the Microsoft 365 server, you must first create a Microsoft Entra ID application for Veeam Backup for Salesforce on the Microsoft Identity Platform. To learn how to register an application, see Microsoft Docs.

When creating the application, consider the following:

- The following API permissions must be granted to the application:
 - o SMTP.Send
 - o Mail.Send

• The redirect URI added to the application must match the management server FQDN that you use to access the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI. To make sure that you are adding the correct URI, switch to the **Configuration** page and navigate to **Security** > **Single Sign-On**. The address will be displayed in the **Callback URL** field.

To configure mail server settings, do the following:

- 1. From the **Connection settings** drop-down list, select *Microsoft 365 (modern authentication)*.
- 2. In the **Application ID** field, provide the *Application (client) ID* of the registered Microsoft Entra ID application. You can find the ID on the app registration **Overview** pane on the Microsoft Identity Platform.
- 3. In the **Directory ID** field, specify the *Directory (tenant) ID* of the registered Microsoft Entra ID application. You can find the ID on the app registration **Overview** pane on the Microsoft Identity Platform.
- 4. In the **Client secret** field, enter the value of a client secret created in the specified application.

Keep in mind that you can see and copy a *Client Secret* value only when creating it. Otherwise, you will not be able to retrieve the value. To learn how to create client secrets, see <u>Microsoft Docs</u>.

5. To save the settings, click **Save**.

You will be redirected to the Microsoft Identity Platform. Navigate to the created application page, and grant admin consent to the application. To learn how to do that, see Microsoft Docs.

6. Click Configure Sender Email.

You will be redirected to the Microsoft Identity Platform. Sign in using a Microsoft Identity Platform account that will be used by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send notification alerts. A user must be assigned a Microsoft 365 license to the Exchange Online service, and a mailbox must be created for this user.

TIP

Back to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI, you can send a test message to check whether you have configured all settings correctly. To do that, specify an email address to which the email will be sent in the **Send Test Email** window.

Configuring Slack Settings

To send alert notifications to specific Slack channels and chats, you must create a Slack app. To learn how to create an app in Slack, see Slack Documentation. Depending on how you want the Slack app to work, the Slack app must be assigned a scope of specific permissions, for example: the chat:write permission scope is required to send messages to chats.

To configure Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send alert notifications to Slack, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Alerts > Connection Settings.
- 3. Set the **Slack alerts** toggle to *On*.
- 4. In the **Token** field, provide an access token generated by the created Slack app. The access token can be found on your Slack app management page in the **OAuth & Permissions** sidebar menu.
- 5. To save the settings, click **Save**.

TIP

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to send a test message to check whether you have configured all settings correctly. To do that, click **Send Test Message** and specify the name of a user or a channel to which the message will be sent.

${}^{\mbox{\sc l}}$	Backup Res	store Browse Archive		Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	
\langle	Exit Configuration	Alerts Connection Settings				
Арр	lication	Save				
•	Salesforce	Email alerts: On				
1918 2 8	Users and Roles	Connection settings:				
©	Security	Application ID:				
2	License	734e4138-6fd2-417f-b32e-5a87f5b13788				
Х	About	Directory ID: 4468fde5-48b8-4f24-b3f0-ce8a4078ca3f				
		Client secret: 				
		Callback URL:				
		https://node.app-01.vbsf.demo.prg.esx.cis.local	Copy to Clipboard			
		🤜 Verify				
		Sender:				
		vbsf.backup@veeamrdcloudbackupqa3.onmicrosoft.com				
		🖂 Configure Sender Email				
		Slack alerts: On				
		Server address:				
		https://slack.com/				
		Token:				

		🚏 Send Test Message				

Creating Alerts

To create an alert, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Alerts.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. Complete the Add Alert wizard:
 - a. At the **Alert Type** step of the wizard, use the the **Event** drop-down list to select the type of events for which you want to create the alert, and specify the conditions under which Veeam Backup for Salesforce will trigger this alert.

If you select the *Data change* event type, you must also specify a Salesforce organization and choose objects that will be affected by the alert. For an object to be displayed in the list of available objects, it must be added to the backup policy that protects the specified Salesforce organization as described in section Creating Backup Policies. Note that if the list does not contain the necessary object, this means that the object was excluded from the policy.

Backup Re	store Browse Archive
< Add Alert	
Alert Type	Specify alert settings
Recipients	Event:
	Data change 🗸
	Select objects: 🏢 1 object(s) selected for Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
	Alert on:
	Percentage of records V 30
	✓ Inserted
	✓ Updated
	✓ Deleted
	Next Cancel

b. At the Recipients step of the wizard, you can specify the following notification settings:

i. In the **Roles** section, you can limit the scope of users that will receive notifications triggered by the created alert.

If a selected role is assigned to a single user, this user will receive notifications in the Web UI and by email; if a selected role is assigned to a group of users, these users will receive notifications in the Web UI only. To instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send notifications to the group by email, add the group email address to the group settings in Microsoft Azure Entra ID as described in Microsoft Docs.
ii. In the **Custom recipients** section, you can specify a list of additional email addresses and Slack channel names that will also receive notifications triggered by the created alert.

The addresses of email recipients must be specified in the following format: email@domain.com; the addresses of Slack recipients must be specified in either of the following formats: @username, #channelname, @userid or channelid. The items in the recipient lists must be separated by a semicolon and whitespace.

For Veeam Backup for Salesforce to be able to send notifications to email addresses and Slack channels, you must configure notifications settings beforehand as described in section Configuring Notification Settings.

iii. In the Subject and Threshold fields, you can provide a subject for notifications that will be triggered by the created alert, and specify the event recurrence threshold that must be breached for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send the notifications (that is, if you set the threshold to 5, the product will send a notification only upon the 6th event).

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to pass runtime variables into the subject. For more information, see Alert Variables.

Backup Re	store Browse Archive	Adminis
Add Alert		
Alert Type	Specify recipients and message options	
Recipients	Roles: Administrators Backup operators Restore operators Viewers Custom recipients: Email: Alert channel is not configured Restore are more variables you can use to compose a subject line. See the list of supported variables.	
	Subject: [%job_status%]: [%job_type%] backup for [%salesforce_name%] Threshold: 50 How many times the alert needs to trigger before the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is sent. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send immediately a send to the message is send. 0 - send to the message is send	iately.
	Previous Next	Cancel

c. [Applies only if you have selected the *Archival policy*, *Backup policy*, *Database connection*, *Encryption job*, *Restore job* or *Salesforce connection* event type] At the **Organizations** step of the wizard, you can choose whether you want to limit the list of companies and Salesforce organizations that will be affected by the created alert.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive	Adminis
🔶 🛛 Add Alert		
Alert Type Recipients Organizations	Scope of organizations Select companies and Salesforce organizations to which this alert should be applied to. Company or salesforce org Selected: 0 organizations in 1 company \sim \blacksquare All \sim \Box Veeam RND1 \square Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox) \checkmark Bonatti Company	
	Previous	Finish

Alert Variables

When you specify a subject for notifications, you can use the following runtime variables:

- [%job_name%] the name of a backup policy or restore job.
- [%job_status%] the current status of the backup policy or restore job.
- [%job_type%] the type of a backup job.
- [%company_name%] the name of a company to which a protected Salesforce organization belongs.
- [%salesforce_name%] the name of a protected Salesforce organization.
- [%api_usage%] the total number of API requests that were sent to Salesforce.
- [%deleted%] the total number of records that were deleted from Salesforce.
- [%failed%] the total number of records that Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process.
- [%changed%] the total number of records that were updated in Salesforce.
- [%inserted%] the total number of new records that were added to the backup policy.
- [%tip%] the total number of [%changed%], [%deleted%] and [%inserted%] records.
- [%object_name%] the name of an object whose records are affected by the alert.

Editing Alerts

For each alert, you can modify settings configured while creating the alert:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to Alerts.
- 3. Select the necessary alert from the list and click Edit.
- 4. Complete the **Edit Alert** wizard:
 - a. [Applies only to the *Archival policy*, *Backup policy*, *Data change*, *Encryption job*, *File storage size*, *License* and *Restore job* event types] To modify the conditions under which Veeam Backup for Salesforce will trigger the alert, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Alerts (step 4a).
 - b. [Applies only to the *Data change* event type] To modify the list of objects affected by the alert, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Alerts (step 4a).
 - c. To modify the notification settings configured for the alert, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Alerts (step 4b).
 - d. [Applies only to the *Archival policy*, *Backup policy*, *Database connection*, *Encryption job*, *Restore job* or *Salesforce connection* event types] To modify the list of companies and organizations affected by the alert, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Alerts (step 4c).

ຝ	Backup Res	store Browse	Archive				Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	
¢	Exit Configuration	Alerts Co	onnection Settings	_					
Арр	lication	Search	Q	Filters (None)					
-	Salesforce Companies	🕂 Add 🦯 Edii	जि	K Delete					
4	Users and Roles	■ ID ↓	Туре	Notify on	Send to	Channel	State	Organizations	000
Ø	Security	Selected: 1 of 6							
R	Alerts	Alert 7	File storage size	Warning	All	Application	🖒 Enabled	All	
9	License	Alert 6	Data change	Success, Warning, Er	All	Application	🖒 Enabled	Veeam RND1 - nd	
Х	About	Alert 4	License	Warning, Error	Administrators	Application	🖒 Enabled	All	
		Alert 3	Salesforce conn	Error	Administrators	Application	U Enabled	All	
		Alert 2	Database conne	Error	Administrators	Application	🖒 Enabled	All	
		Alert 1	Encryption job	Warning, Error	Administrators, Backup op	Application	🖒 Enabled	All	

Configuring Advanced Settings

You can view and modify system limits and default settings configured in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. To do that, switch to the **Configuration** page, navigate to **About** > **Advanced Settings** and click **Confirm**. From the drop-down list, choose whether you want to view the restore or backend advanced settings. Note that only an Administrator can update the advanced settings.

IMPORTANT

Changing the default advanced settings may result in unsupported or unusable product configuration. Do not change the settings unless it is advised in this document or by the Veeam Customer Support Team. If you change a setting accidentally, select this setting and click **Reset to Default**.

The **Backend service** list shows general settings of the management server and key settings that Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses for backend operations:

- archive.hierarchy.default.restricted.depth the deepest hierarchy level of child records linked to the root record using restricted relationships that can be deleted by Veeam Backup for Salesforce.
- archive.object.allow.parallel defines whether the product runs parallel archival policies for the same root object or file type. It is not recommended to run multiple archival policies for one root object or file type as it may cause unexpected errors.
- aws.allowed.region the codes of AWS regions to which master keys of the connected AWS account belong. If these parameter values do not match the necessary AWS region codes, the product will not be able to access the keys of this region. For more information on codes, see the AWS Documentation.
- backend.domain the FQDN or IP address of the management server. Keep in mind that this parameter value match the callback URL in the Connected App settings in Salesforce and redirect URI in Microsoft Entra ID.
- backend.metadata.download.files the maximum number of metadata files that you can download at a time to the local machine during a restore operation. The minimum value is 1; the maximum value is 500.
- backend.object.limit.rows the maximum number of backed-up records retrieved from the product database that are displayed on the Browse tab. The minimum value is 1; the maximum value is 50,000.
- backend.reschedule.job.delay the minimum delay(in seconds) before Veeam Backup for Salesforce restarts a job. This parameters applies only if the backend.reschedule.job.enable parameter value is set to *true*.
- backend.reschedule.job.delay.random the maximum random delay (in seconds) before Veeam Backup for Salesforce restarts a job. This parameters applies only if the backend.reschedule.job.enable parameter value is set to *true*.
- backend.reschedule.job.enable defines whether an archival or backup job will be restarted in case there is not enough memory of the management server required to run multiple jobs in parallel. If you set this parameter value to *true*, all jobs that run in parallel are restarted by Veeam Backup for Salesforce according to the configured backend.reschedule.job.delay and backend.reschedule.job.delay.random parameters. If you set this parameter value to *false*, all jobs will fail with an error and will not be restarted.
- backup.describe.objects.in.batch the number of objects in one request sent to Salesforce during a metadata backup session.

- backup.disk.cache.enabled the indication whether the product performs caching of data retrieved from Salesforce. It is recommended that you enable this setting in case a database that is used to store backed-up data is hosted on the same server as Veeam Backup for Salesforce, backed-up data is stored on hard disk drives (HDD), or timeout errors occur when connecting to Salesforce.
- backup.file.max.failure the maximum number of failed attempts to back up a file before the file is excluded from the backup policy. If you set this parameter value to *O*, the file will not be excluded from the backup policy regardless of the number of failed attempts.
- backup.metadata.retrieve.batchsize the number of metadata files retrieved in one request (batch) to Salesforce during a backup session. If you set this parameter value to *O*, the number of requests sent to Salesforce will depend on the amount of processed data.
- backup.query.preferred the indication whether the product uses bulk API queries for data backup. If this parameter value is set to *true*, the product uses bulk API queries only. If the parameter value is set to *false*, the product can use either bulk API or *QueryAll* requests.
- data.storage.location the path to the folder where the product stores backups of Salesforce files and metadata. By default, the product stores backups in the /opt/vbsf/data folder. If you change this parameter value, you must move all your backups to a new location manually before enabling backup policies. Note that each Salesforce organization has its unique subfolder containing the organization ID that cannot be modified.
- encryption.data.object.max.field the maximum number of record fields that can be encrypted for one object. Note that if you increase this parameter value, the backup job may take significant time to complete.
- logging.add.domain.filename defines whether the product adds the backend domain name to the name of the downloaded log archive file.
- logging.archive.file.retention the period of time (in days) during which the product keeps archival session logs in the configuration database and log storage folder.
- logging.backend.file.retention the period of time (in days) during which the product keeps configuration logs in the log storage folder.
- logging.backup.file.retention the period of time (in days) during which the product keeps backup logs in the configuration database and log storage folder.
- logging.restore.file.retention the period of time (in days) during which the product keeps restore logs in the configuration database and log storage folder.
- mask.template.default the default data masking template that is automatically generated by Veeam Backup for Salesforce upon installation.
- proxy.settings the settings of a web proxy that the management server uses to connect to the internet.
- restore.compatible.only defines whether Veeam Backup for Salesforce will restore data to a compatible Salesforce organization only (that is, from a production to a sandbox organization that was created based on the environment of this production organization). This feature is experimentally supported in Veeam Backup for Salesforce version 3.0 and later. For more information on experimental support, see this Veeam KB article.
- restore.job.allow.parallel defines whether the product runs parallel restore jobs for the same organization.
- restore.job.draft.lifetime.days the period of time (in days) during which the product keeps restore job drafts in the configuration database. If you set this parameter value to *O*, the product will keep job drafts for 1 day only.

- sf.api.version Salesforce API version of the Veeam backup and backend services.
- ui.restore.max.selected.records the maximum number of root records that can be restored in one restore job. This parameter applies to record, field and metadata restore jobs only.

The **Restore service** list shows key settings that Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses for restore operations:

- archive.bulk.exec.timeout.minutes the timeout (in minutes) used for a Bulk API archival job (maximum amount of time (in minutes) for a Bulk API archival job to execute). When the timeout is exceeded, Veeam Backup for Salesforce sends a new bulk request to Salesforce. The default parameter value is 60.
- archive.fetch.size the maximum number of records the product retrieves from the product database in one request during an archival session.
- archive.thread.pool.size the number of worker threads processed during an archival session.
- hierarchy.default.child.depth the maximum level to which child records are automatically restored. This setting applies only to those records that have not been reviewed (customized) when configuring child hierarchy for restore. The default parameter value is 2, that is, the product restores records that you selected when specifying data for restore and 2 levels of their child records.
- hierarchy.default.parent.depth the maximum level of the parent object hierarchy that is specified when configuring hierarchy advanced settings. The default parameter value is 1.
- log.obfuscation.level the level of masking sensitive data in restore logs.
- restore.bulk.exec.timeout.minutes the timeout (in minutes) for a Bulk API restore job to execute. When the timeout is exceeded, Veeam Backup for Salesforce sends a new bulk request to Salesforce. The default parameter value is 60.
- restore.bulk.threshold the maximum number of records sent to Salesforce before the product switches to Bulk API 2.0.
- restore.fetch.size the maximum number of records the product retrieves from the product database in one request during a restore session.
- restore.objects.filter the set of rules that define what types of objects and records Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not restore. By default, these rules include those object and record types whose restore is not supported.
- restore.parallel.hierarchy.threshold the maximum number of root records restored in sequence before the product switches to parallel restore.
- restore.thread.pool.size the number of worker threads processed during a restore session.
- sf.composite.batch.size the number of records the product sends to Salesforce in one request
 (batch) during a restore session.

Performing Salesforce Backup

To perform backup of Salesforce organizations, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs backup policies. A backup policy is a collection of settings that define the way backup operations are performed: what data to back up, where to store backups, when to start the backup process, and so on.

NOTE

Only users assigned the *Administrator* or *Backup Operator* role can perform backup operations in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. However, these users can create and run backup policies within their permission scope only – that is, for companies and organizations whose data they can access.

Creating Backup Policies

To create a backup policy, complete the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Add Backup Policy wizard.
- 2. Configure connection to a Salesforce organization.
- 3. Configure policy schedule and backup options.
- 4. Enable backup of files and attachments.
- 5. Configure encryption settings
- 6. Configure retention settings.
- 7. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Launch Add Backup Policy Wizard

To launch the Add Backup Policy wizard, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to protect belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the Add Backup Policy wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click Add.

Backup	Restore Browse	Archive			(P)RND 🗸 🔹 Adr	ninistrator 🗸 🌘 Englis	h • 🗘 🏟) Configuration
Policy name	٩	Show: All	⊘ ▲ ⊗	• ×				
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit	🗙 Delete 🗼 Run	Stop	් Enable 🛛 i	View Details				
PolicyName	Salesforce Alias		Status	Schedule	Salesforce User	Created Date ↓	Last Run Date	000
backup-policy-836255	(P)RND - Prod		Success	<mark>්</mark> Hourly	vbsf_rnd@company	8/18/22, 10:48:51 AM	8/29/22, 10:00:17 AM	
backup-policy-836251	(P)RND - partial (sa	indbox)	😣 Failed	🖰 Hourly	vbsf@company.com	8/16/22, 6:15:23 PM	8/29/22, 10:00:16 AM	
backup-policy-828901	(P)RND - preprod (s	sandbox)	× Aborted	U Hourly	max@company.com	8/10/22, 11:08:09 AM	8/29/22, 10:00:15 AM	

Step 2. Configure Connection to Salesforce Organization

At the **Connection** step of the wizard, connect to a Salesforce organization and specify a database that will be used to store backed-up data:

- 1. In the Log in with Salesforce account section:
 - a. Choose a Salesforce organization that you want to protect. You can choose an organization that is already connected to Veeam Backup for Salesforce or connect to a new organization. For an organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must not be protected by any other backup policy on this management server and must belong to the company selected at step 1.

To connect to a new organization, do the following:

- i. Choose whether you want to use a Salesforce organization hosted on a production instance, sandbox instance or custom domain. If you select the **Custom domain** option, you must also specify the organization domain name.
- ii. Click Log in with Salesforce account. You will be redirected to the Salesforce authentication webpage.
- iii. On the Salesforce authentication webpage, enter credentials of a Salesforce user of the organization that you want to protect, and click **Log in**.

The specified Salesforce user must be assigned permissions required for Veeam Backup for Salesforce to be able to perform backup and restore operations. For information, see Permissions.

NOTE

Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not store Salesforce user credentials used to log in to Salesforce. To authorize in Salesforce and access Salesforce data, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses the Connected App specified during the initial configuration. You can change the Connected App as described in section Changing Connected App Tokens, but keep in mind that after changing the Connected App, you will have to re-authorize all connections to Salesforce organizations added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

2. Back to the **Add Backup Policy** wizard, check whether any errors occurred during the authentication process and do the following:

IMPORTANT

If an error occurs, check whether the Salesforce organization whose user you used to log in to Salesforce is not protected by another backup policy configured on this management server.

- a. In the Verify permissions section, verify whether the permissions assigned to the specified user are enough to perform backup and restore operations. To do that, click Verify permissions and wait for the check to complete. If any of the permissions are missing, you must grant them in the Salesforce console manually as described in Salesforce documentation.
- b. In the **Connect to a database** section, choose a database that will be used to store backups of the protected Salesforce organization. To do that, click **Select a database**. The **Database connection** window will open.

You can add a new database or select a database that has already been added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce:

- To add a database without closing the Add Backup Policy wizard, click New Database Connection and specify connection settings in the Add Database Connection window as described in section Adding Databases.
- To specify an already added database, select the database from the list. For a database to be displayed in the list of available databases, it must be created as described in section Adding Databases. You cannot choose a database that is used to protect any other Salesforce organization as one database can be used to protect one organization only.

NOTES

When connecting to a database, consider the following:

- You can either connect to an empty database or a database with the same schema as the source database. In latter case, the organization IDs of the both databases must be the same.
- You can connect only to a database that belongs to the company that you selected at step 1.

Backup Re				Veeam 🗸	🔺 Administrator 🗸			
Add backu	p policy	Add Database Connecti	on		×			
Connection	Salesforce and Da	PostgreSQL Server Conne	ction			_		×
Backup	Connect to Salesforce	○ Use existing	vbsf@dbhost	local:5432	~	e Connection		
Files	Log in with Salesforc	New server connection	I				Server	
Encryption	🚢 Connected with r	PostgreSQL address:	dbhost.local				dbhost.local	
Retention	Verify permissions	Port:	5432				dbhost.local	
Summary	Verify basic user permi	Username: Password:	vbsf				dbhost.local dbhost.local	
	Verification comp	Create or connect to a dat	abase					
	Each Salesforce organ	Database name: config_	new					
	🔋 dbhost.local / lab	Connection label: dept01						
					Add Cancel	-		
				_				
			Apply	Cancel				

Step 3. Configure Backup Settings

At the **Backup** step of the wizard, specify schedules according to which Veeam Backup for Salesforce will launch policy sessions, exclude objects and fields from the backup scope, automatically add new objects and fields to the policy, and limit API calls sent by Veeam Backup for Salesforce to Salesforce:

- 1. Configure schedules for the backup policy.
- 2. Configure additional backup options.

Step 3a. Configure Backup Schedules

In the **Backup schedule** section of the **Backup** step of the wizard, configure default and custom schedules for the backup policy.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce has 3 built-in schedules:

- Hourly this schedule launches a backup policy session at the beginning of every hour.
- Daily this schedule launches a backup policy session every day at 00:00 UTC.
- Weekly this schedule launches a backup policy session every Sunday at 00:00 UTC.

NOTE

You cannot edit or remove the built-in schedules. If none of the built-in schedules meets your business needs, you can create a new schedule. To learn how to create schedules, see Creating Schedules.

Specifying Default Schedule for Backup Policy

From the **Default schedule for this policy** drop-down list, select a default schedule that will be used to back up data of all objects of the protected organization that have no custom schedules assigned, to back up object metadata, to back up files and attachments if you specify any at step 4, and to back up new objects and fields if you select this option in the Additional backup options section. You can select one of the built-in schedules or create a new one as described in section Creating Schedules.

Specifying Custom Schedules for Protected Objects

If some objects are updated frequently and need to be backed up more or less often than other objects belonging to the protected Salesforce organization, you can assign custom schedules to these objects. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will launch a separate backup session to protect each group of objects according to the assigned schedule. It is recommended that you assign the same schedule to the related Salesforce objects to ensure that these objects can be restored properly.

To assign a schedule to an object, do the following:

- 1. Click the link in the **Custom schedules** field.
- 2. In the Specify schedule per object window, do the following:
 - a. In the **Object** list, select check boxes next to the objects that must be protected according to a specific schedule.
 - b. Click **Assign schedule**, choose the necessary schedule from the **Schedule** drop-down list in the **Assign** schedule window, and click **Assign**.

TIP

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce backs up all supported Salesforce objects of the protected organization. However, some Salesforce objects cannot be restored, such as history objects. If you do not want to back up these or any other objects of the organization, you can exclude them from the backup policy. To do that, select the **Exclude from backup** option from the **Schedule** drop-down list.

Salesforce objects that are not backed up by Veeam Backup for Salesforce are listed in Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.

c. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

NOTE

By design, the user and organization objects are automatically added to every schedule configured for the backup policy. You cannot exclude these objects manually.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	🔚 Veeam 🗸 🔺 Administrator	▼ English ▼ Configuration
Add backup	policy		
Connection	Salesforce Backup Schedules Configure main and custom schedules for Salesfor	Specify schedule per object	A Define backup schedules per object to meet your RPO
Backup	Backup schedule	targets. Keep in mind, that related objects need to be on the	same schedule to preserve data consistency.
Files	Default schedule is applied to all existing and new default policy.	Name or ADI name O Assign schedule	e Show: All schedules 👻
Encryption	Default schedule for this policy 2 objects		Schedule
Retention	Hourly Schedule:		
Summary	Custom schedules: INO obj	ackup 🗸	Hourly
	Additional backup options	Assign	Hourly
	Auto-discovery of new objects a		the state of the s
	Exclude fields from backup: 🏢 No fields exclude	APXTConga4_Composer_Host_Override_c	Houriy
	Automatically add new objects	Tag: Conga Global Merge APXTConga4_Composer_QuickMerge_Tag	Hourly
	Automatically add new fields on objects	Conga Global Merge APXTConga4_Composer_QuickMerge_c	Hourly
	Set API Limits	Tag: Conga Collection Solution APXTConga4_Conga_Collection_Solution_Tag	Hourly
	Previou	Apply Cancel	

Creating Schedules

IMPORTANT

If you plan to run multiple backup policies at the same time, it is recommended that you add at least 256 MB of RAM per one backup schedule.

To create a new backup schedule for the policy at the **Backup** step of the wizard, do the following:

- 1. In the **Backup schedule** section, click **Manage Schedules**.
- 2. In the Manage Schedules window, click Add New Schedule.
- 3. In the Add New Schedule window, do the following:
 - a. In the **Schedule name** field, specify a name for the schedule. The name must be unique for the company selected at step 1.
 - b. In the **Start policy** section, select the schedule type:
 - To run a backup policy once, select **Once at** and specify the time when the backup policy must run.

Note that you cannot combine one-time schedules with periodic schedules when configuring the default schedule and custom schedules for backup policy. If you select the *Once at* type of schedule as the default policy schedule, you must manually remove all periodic schedules configured for Salesforce objects, wait for the policy session to complete, and then re-configure periodic schedules for the policy.

• To run a backup policy periodically, select **Daily** and specify how often you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to run the policy.

NOTE

The configured schedules are stored in the CRON format and used to run policy sessions. If you specify to run a session every 9 hours, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will follow the following schedule (UTC): Mon 00:00, Mon 09:00, Mon 18:00, Tue 00:00, Tue 09:00, Tue 18:00 and so on.

- c. [Applies if you have selected the **Daily** option] If you want the backup policy to run only during the specific period of time, select the **Backup window** check box and specify the time interval.
- d. From the **Time zone** drop-down list, select a UTC time offset. By default, the time zone of your browser is selected.
- e. Review the settings and click Add.

The created schedule will be available in all backup policies created for Salesforce organizations within one company. You can further edit or delete these schedules.

IMPORTANT

- You cannot delete a schedule that is used to back up any objects in the current or in any other backup policy within the company. If you want to delete such a schedule, you must first specify a schedule that will replace the deleted one. Consider that the schedule must be replaced in all backup policies created for this company.
- You cannot delete a schedule that is used for an archival policy. Edit the archival policy settings to choose another schedule and then try deleting the backup schedule again.

Backup Restore Bro	wse Archive	Veeam RND1 🗸	🔺 Administrator 🗸	🕀 English 🗸	Configuration
	Add New Schedule			×	
Add backup policy	Specify options for a new schedule				
Connection Salesforce	Schedule name: Friday Backup				×
Backup					
Backup sche	Start policy				🗙 Delete
Default sche default polic	Once at:	12:00 PM 🗸 🗸			
Retention Default sche	Daily: On these days	Friday 🗸			
Summary Custom sche	Every 💙	3	Hours V		y (UTC+0:00) UTC
Additional b		Start minute	5 🗸		
Auto-discove	Time zone: (UTC+1:00) Amsterdam, E	Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockho	olm, Vienna	~	
Exclude field					
🖌 Automa	Backup window () From: 08:00 AM	1 V To: 09:00 AM	~		
Automa	Summary: 🏢 At 5 minutes past the hour, every	3 hours, only on Friday			
Set API L					
			Ad	dd Close	
	Previous	Ciose			_

Step 3b. Configure Additional Options

In the **Additional backup options** section of the **Backup** step of the wizard, you can specify data protection settings and limit the API requests.

Specifying Additional Options

To specify additional data protection options, do the following:

- 1. To exclude specific object fields from the backup policy, click the link in the **Exclude fields from backup** field and select object fields that you want to exclude.
- 2. To automatically protect new objects added to the Salesforce organization, select the **Automatically add new objects** check box.
- 3. To automatically protect new object fields, select the Automatically add new fields on objects check box.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	(🏨) Veeam RND1 👻 ا Administrator 👻 🌘	English 🗸 💭
Add backup	policy		
Connection	Exclude fields		×
Backup	Exclude fields from backup. Existing data in backup v	vill not be removed.	
Files	Name or API name	Field Q	Field Q
Encryption	Object	Fields	Excluded Fields
Retention	Account Account	Selected: 1 of 39	Selected: 0 of 3
Summary	Account Contact Relationship AccountContactRelation	Billing Geocode Accuracy Billing Geocode Accuracy < Remove	Account Source Account.AccountSource
	Account Contact Role AccountContactRole	Billing Latitude Billing Latitude	Billing City Account.BillingCity
	Account History AccountHistory	Billing Longitude Billing Longitude	Billing Country Account.BillingCountry
	Account Partner AccountPartner	Billing Zip/Postal Code BillingPostalCode	
	Account Share AccountShare	Billing State/Province BillingState	
	Action Link Group Template ActionLinkGroupTemplate	Billing Street BillingStreet	
	Action Link Template	Created By ID CreatedById	
	- V	Created Date 🗸	
	Apply Cancel		

Setting API Request Limits

The total number of API requests that can be sent to Salesforce within 24 hours is limited for each Salesforce organization. To ensure that Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not conflict with other applications that use API requests for integration with Salesforce, it is strongly recommended that you specify thresholds for REST API and BULK API requests that must not be breached during backup operations. For more information on the API request limits, see Salesforce Documentation.

By design, Veeam Backup for Salesforce checks the number of remaining API requests every time it starts a new policy session:

• If any of the specified thresholds is breached, the session fails with an error indicating that the API request limit has been exceeded.

• If none of the specified thresholds is breached, Veeam Backup for Salesforce starts processing objects added to the policy one by one.

Every time it processes a new object, it checks the number of remaining API requests — if any of the specified thresholds is breached, the session fails with an error indicating that the API request limit has been exceeded, and all objects that have not been processed yet remain unprotected. However, Veeam Backup for Salesforce continues sending requests to Salesforce to back up objects whose processing started before the session failed. The latter may cause Veeam Backup for Salesforce to accidentally exceed the maximum limit of API requests that you specified.

To specify the REST API and BULK API request thresholds, click **Set API Limits** and enter the necessary threshold values (in percentage) in the **Set API limits** window.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	Veeam RND1 V	Configuration
Add backup	policy		
Connection	Salesforce Backup Schedules	Set API limits	×
Backup	Configure main and custom schedules for Salesforce data backup. Sale	When the threshold is reached the backup policy will fail to start	
Files	Backup schedule	REST API usage limit: 50 🗘 %	
Encoration	Default schedule is applied to all existing and new objects on this policy default policy.	BULK API usage limit: 50 🛟 %	
Encryption	Default schedule for this policy:	CRESET TO Defaults	
Retention	Weekiy 👻 🐺 Manage Schedules		
Summary	Custom schedules: 🎆 No objects use custom schedule	Apply Cancel	
	Additional backup options		
	Auto-discovery of new objects and fields. Field exclusions.		
	Exclude fields from backup: III No fields excluded		
	✓ Automatically add new objects		
	Automatically add new fields on objects		
	Set API Limits		
	Previous Next		

Step 4. Enable Backup of Files and Attachments

[This step is available only if the Salesforce user that you have specified at step 2 is assigned the Query All Files permission in Salesforce]

IMPORTANT

Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 allows you to back up the *MobileApplicationDetail* and *MailmergeTemplate* type of content. However, restore of this type of content is not supported.

At the **Files** step of the wizard, you can choose types of files that you want to back up. To do that, click the link in the **Backup files and attachments** field and select the necessary file types in the **File backup options** window. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display in the **Repository location** field the local directory on the management server that will be used to store the backed-up files.

NOTES

- If you choose to back up the *ContentVersion* type of objects, note that Veeam Backup for Salesforce will also back up the following types of objects: *ContentDocument, ContentVersion, ContentNote, ContentDocumentLink, FeedItem, FeedAttachment.*
- For each protected organization, the product automatically creates a subfolder with a unique name containing the organization ID that cannot be modified. Therefore, if you remove a backup policy and then create a new policy for the same organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will use the same backup location for this organization.
- If you remove a backup policy, data stored in the specified location will not be removed automatically. If you do not need the backed-up files and attachments anymore, you must delete them manually.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive	Keeam RND1 👻 🔔 Admir	nistrator 🗸 💮 English 🖌 💭 🏟 Configuration
Add backup	policy		
Connection Backup	Backup Files and Attachments Back up content documents, attachments and Backup files and attachments: No files selec	File backup options Select file objects to back up. Binary data will be download Available (6)	ded to the file repository. Selected (1)
Files Encryption Retention Summary		Attachment (Attachment) Content Version (ContentVersion) EmailCapture (EmailCapture) Mail Merge Template (MailmergeTemplate) Mobile Application Detail (MobileApplicationDet Quote PDF (QuoteDocument)	Add> Cocument (Document)
	Pre	Apply Cancel	

Step 5. Configure Encryption Settings

At the **Encryption** step of the wizard, you can configure the following encryption settings:

1. In the **Encryption settings** section, choose whether you want to encrypt specific object fields, file types or both. If you do not select any object fields or file types, this data will not be encrypted.

For an object field to be displayed in the list of available fields, both the object and the field must be added to the backup scope specified for the backup policy at step 3. For a file type to be displayed in the list of available file types, it must be included in the list of backup files and attachments added to the backup policy at step 4.

IMPORTANT

- Veeam Backup for Salesforce supports encryption of the following field types only: *Text, TextArea, Text Area (Long), Text (Encrypted), Address, Number, Email, Text Formula, Number Formula, Percent Formula, Currency Formula, Geolocation.* For more information on Salesforce field types, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If an object record that you want to back up contains fields that have been specified as filtering conditions in an archival policy, you will not be able to encrypt these fields. Edit the filtering criteria settings of the archival policy and then modify the backup policy settings to encrypt these fields.
- By default, you can encrypt maximum 10 fields for one object. To be able to encrypt more object fields, modify the encryption.data.object.max.field parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.
- 2. In the **Encryption key** section, choose whether you want to encrypt backed-up data using an AWS master key or a built-in master key generated by Veeam Backup for Salesforce. If you want to use an AWS master key, you must also select the region to which the key belongs.

For an AWS master key to be displayed in the list of available keys, it must be added to the selected region in an AWS account as described in AWS Documentation, and this account must be connected to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Configuring Encryption Settings. If you have not connected the AWS account beforehand, you can do it without closing the Add Backup Policy window. To do that, click Add AWS KMS Connection and follow the instructions provided in section Adding Connections.

When you complete the **Add Backup Policy** wizard for the first time, Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not run an encryption job, but uses data and file jobs to encrypt fields and files. Encryption jobs run only for those backup policies that have already been used to protect fields and files (meaning these items already have backups) and previously had the encryption functionality disabled. For more information on backup job types, see Viewing Backup Policy Sessions.

IMPORTANT

If you choose to encrypt backed-up data with a built-in encryption key, it is recommended that you download the data key to your workstation as described in section Managing Encryption Keys. Otherwise, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will be not able to decrypt the data in case you migrate the product to another workstation.

Backup Res				ND1 🗸 🔹 Adminis			
Add backup	policy						
Connection	Data Encryption Encrypt selected fields and	file types on the fly duri	Encryption key				×
Backup	Encryption settings		Key Management Service:	Built-in encryption key		~	Add AWS KMS Connection
Files	You can configure encrypti	on for selected object fie	Encryption Key:	b49ad93		~	
Encryption	backup policy run.	Connect to Key Man	agement Service		×		
Retention	Fields encryption: 2 fields	Key Management Servi	ce: AWS Key Management	Service	~		
Summary	Files encryption: 1 file ty	Connection details					
	Encryption key	Access Key Id:	admin				
	Encrypt data with built-in (Secret Access Key:	•••••				
	Encryption Key: Built-in er	Company					
	Start encryption job ir	Company:	Veeam RND1		~		
	A Encryption settings w			Save	Cancel		
		Previous	Apply Cancel				

Step 6. Configure Retention Settings

At the **Retention** step of the wizard, you can configure retention settings for the backed-up data — a time period during which Veeam Backup for Salesforce keeps attachments that were deleted from Salesforce and history records. It allows you to consume less storage space by deleting attachments and history records that are older than the specified time period.

Consider the following:

- The time period is calculated since creation of a backup of a Salesforce record, not since creation of the record itself.
- Veeam Backup for Salesforce will always keep the latest version of a record in the backup even if the specified retention limit is reached and the record has been deleted from Salesforce.

To configure retention settings for the backup policy, do the following:

- 1. In the Data and attachments retention policy section:
 - a. In the **Keep versions for** field, specify the number of days (weeks, months, years) for which you want to keep Salesforce history records and deleted attachments.
 - b. If you want to configure specific retention settings for different objects protected by the backup policy, click the **Define custom retention policy** link.

In the **Custom Retention Settings** window, click **Add Object**, select the necessary object from the **Object** drop-down list, and specify the retention period. Click **Apply**.

IMPORTANT

Attachments associated with records to which custom retention settings are applied will still be removed according to the main data and attachments retention policy specified in the **Keep versions for** field.

- 2. The settings specified in the **Data and attachments retention policy** section do not apply to backups of Files, Content and Documents created by the policy. If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to automatically delete these backups according to the retention policy, you must configure their own retention settings in the **Files, Content, Documents** section:
 - To instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to remove backups of files that were permanently deleted from Salesforce according to the retention policy, select the **Purge deleted content older than** check box and specify the period after which these files will be removed.

 To instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to remove backups of file versions, select the **Purge content** versions older than check box and specify the period after which the outdated versions will be removed.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive 🕀 Veeam RND1 🗸 🏝 Administrator 🗸 🛞 English 🖌 💭 🔅 Configuration
Add backup	o policy
Connection Backup	Retention Policy Salesforce data tends to grow over time. Retention settings will automatically erase historical data and files based on these settings.
Filer	Data and attachments retention policy
Encryption	Define main retention schedule. Keep versions for: 3
Retention	Define custom retention policy
Summary	Files, Content, Documents
	Define retention for files, content and content versions.
	Previous Next In Finish Cancel

Step 7. Finish Working with Wizard

At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Finish**.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive		Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸	sh 🗸 💭	Configuration
Add backup	policy					
Connection	Objects					
Backup Files Encryption	Main schedule: Objects count: Excluded objects: Automatically add new objects: Automatically add new fields: Exclude fields:	Weekly 353 0 Yes Yes 0				
Retention	Files					
Summary	Document:	Yes				
	Encryption					
	Fields encryption: Files encryption:	2 1				
	Retention					
	Data and attachments: Custom data retention: Files, content, documents: File versions retention:	3 months — 1 year 1 year				
		Prev	rious Finish	Cancel		

Starting and Stopping Backup Policies

You can start a backup policy manually, for example, if you want to create an additional backup in the backup chain and do not want to modify the configured backup policy schedules. You can also stop a backup policy if processing of a session is about to take too long, and you do not want the policy to have an impact on the production environment during business hours.

To start or stop a backup policy:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the backup policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary backup policy.

You can filter backup policies displayed on the **Backup** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click **Run** or **Stop**. Keep in mind that if you run a backup policy, it will automatically launch all backup data, file and metadata jobs configured for this policy. For more information on backup jobs, see Backup Job Types.

If you stop the running backup policy, in the **Confirm Policy Stop** window, do the following:

- Click **Hard Stop** to immediately stop the backup policy. In this case, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will interrupt the currently running backup session, and the backup policy will acquire the *Aborted* status.
- Click Graceful Stop to complete backup for Salesforce objects that are already being processed by the backup session. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will stop the policy execution when backup of the processed objects is finished, and the backup policy will acquire the *Stopped* status.

Backup	Restore Browse Arcł	nive			dministrator 🗸 🛑 English	• • (<u>)</u> 🔅	Configuration
Policy name	Q Show:	All 🔮 🔺	8 0 X				
🕂 Add 🛛 🥕 Edit	X Delete	O Disable	i View Details				
Policy Name	Salesforce Alias	Status	Schedule	Salesforce User	Created Date ↓	Last Run Date	000
backup-policy-464	RGB	Success	<mark>ሆ</mark> Weekly	vbsf_cp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:13:53 PM	11/2/22, 1:14:05 PM	
backup-policy-461	RGB - VM-FR (production)	Success	O Disabled	mlp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:11:03 PM	11/2/22, 1:11:16 PM	
backup-policy-454	VeRGB - Puertos (producti	Success	U Weekly	sara.baker@company	10/25/22, 11:45:30 PM	11/2/22, 1:00:11 AM	

Disabling and Enabling Backup Policies

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs all created backup policies according to the specified schedules. However, you can temporarily disable a backup policy so that Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not run the backup policy automatically. You will still be able to manually start or enable the disabled backup policy at any time you need.

To disable or enable a backup policy, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the backup policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary backup policy.

You can filter backup policies displayed on the **Backup** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click **Disable** or **Enable**.

Backup	Restore Browse Archi	ve		(P)RND V	Iministrator 🗸 💮 English	• (() () (Configuration
Policy name	Q Show: A	JI 🗢 🔺 🔇) () ×				
🕂 Add 🛛 🥕 Edit	🗙 Delete 📔 🕨 Run 🔳 Stop	Disable	i View Details				
Policy Name	Salesforce Alias	States	Schedule	Salesforce User	Created Date ↓	Last Run Date	000
backup-policy-464	RGB	Success	ሪ Weekly	vbsf_cp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:13:53 PM	11/2/22, 1:14:05 PM	
backup-policy-461	RGB - VM-FR (production)	Success	O Disabled	mlp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:11:03 PM	11/2/22, 1:11:16 PM	
backup-policy-454	VeRGB - Puertos (producti	Success	<mark>ሪ</mark> Weekly	sara.baker@company	10/25/22, 11:45:30 PM	11/2/22, 1:00:11 AM	

Editing Backup Policies

For each backup policy, you can modify settings configured while creating the policy:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the backup policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary backup policy.

You can filter backup policies displayed on the **Backup** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click Edit.

IMPORTANT

If you encounter an error while trying to reconnect to the Salesforce organization, check whether the specified credentials belong to a user from the same Salesforce organization.

- 5. Complete the **Edit Backup Policy** wizard:
 - a. To choose another database that will be used to protect your Salesforce organization, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 2).
 - b. To change the schedule configured for the policy, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 3.1).
 - c. To modify the excluded fields and change the specified API limits, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 3.2).

IMPORTANT

If an object record that you want to back up contains fields that were specified as filtering conditions in an archival policy, you will not be able to exclude these fields from the backup policy. Edit the filtering criteria settings of the archival policy – and then modify the backup policy settings to exclude these fields from the backup scope.

- d. To modify the list of files and attachments that you want to back up, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 4).
- e. To change the encryption settings configured for the policy, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 5).

If you want to decrypt fields or files that have encrypted backups, edit the encryption settings to remove these fields or files from the list of encrypted items.

You can also instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start encrypting or decrypting data immediately after completing the wizard. To do that, select the **Start encryption job immediately after saving the policy** check box. If you clear this check box, the product will start encrypting or decrypting data an hour after you complete the wizard.

IMPORTANT

If a backup policy has already been used to protect fields and files (meaning these items already have backups) and previously had the encryption functionality disabled, it is recommended that you do not encrypt both fields and files at the same time, and that you do not encrypt more than 10 fields for one object — since this may cause performance issues.

- f. To change the retention settings configured for the policy, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Backup Policies (step 6).
- g. At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configuration information and click **Finish** to confirm the changes.

After you edit a backup policy, you can stop or restart a specific backup job without stopping or running the whole policy. To do that, click the link in the **Status** column of the **Backup** tab, choose the necessary backup job, and click **Stop** or **Restart**. However, keep in mind that this functionality is available to Administrators and Backup Operators only, and only the latest versions of backup jobs can be restarted. For more information on backup jobs, see Viewing Policy Details.

NOTE

If you stop an encryption job, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will stop and then automatically restart this job in an hour. If you want to decrypt any of the encrypted fields or files, edit the encryption settings to remove these fields or files from the list of encrypted items.

Backup	Restore Browse	Archive			ministrator 🗸 🌐 English	✓ ① Conf	iguration
Policy name	Q Show	N: All 🕥 🔺	8 0 ×				
🕂 Add 🛛 🔥 Edit	🗙 Delete 📄 🕨 Run	Stop 🛇 Disable	i View Details				
Policy Name	Salesforce Alias	Status	Schedule	Salesforce User	Created Date ↓	Last Run Date	000
backup-policy-464	RGB	Success	🖒 Weekly	vbsf_cp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:13:53 PM	11/2/22, 1:14:05 PM	
backup-policy-461	RGB - VM-FR (production	n) 📀 Success	O Disabled	mlp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:11:03 PM	11/2/22, 1:11:16 PM	
backup-policy-454	VeRGB - Puertos (produc	tti 📀 Success	U Weekly	sara.baker@company	10/25/22, 11:45:30 PM	11/2/22, 1:00:11 AM	

Reloading Fields and Files

If any of the object fields or files included in a backup policy cannot be accessed using the Salesforce user account that you have specified while creating the policy, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not to able to back up these fields or files. If you want to back up these items, you must grant the required permissions to the user account and reload object fields:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab and click the link in the **Status** column.
- 2. Choose the latest backup job session and click Reload Object Fields.
- 3. In the **Reload Object Fields** window, select items that you want to include in the backup policy and click **Run**.

After you click **Run**, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will compare backed-up data in the product database with data currently stored in Salesforce and do the following:

- If Veeam Backup for Salesforce detects a field whose value in the latest version of the backed -up object is different from the value in Salesforce, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will back up the data creating a new restore point for the object. Otherwise, Veeam Backup for Salesforce the field will be skipped from processing.
- If Veeam Backup for Salesforce detects that the same file exists both in Salesforce and in the product database, the file will be skipped from processing. Otherwise, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will back up the file.

IMPORTANT

- It is recommended that you do not reload object fields for objects that are currently being backed up.
- Reloading fields of the *FeedItem* object type is not supported.

Backup Restor	re Browse Ar	thive (In AB-test V	Admin	istrator 🗸 💮 English	•	🔅 Configu	
Example backup-policy	-255071						
Backup Sessions Type	All	Show: All 🔮 🛦 😢 👀 🗙 🔳 Stop	Restart	i View Details	👱 Download L	ogs (~ Ref	fresh
Session ID ↓ Type	Start	Reload Object Fields	×	API Usage	Created	Updated	000
41922 Validate	9/22/24, 1:35:07	Reload selected fields for all backed up records. Job starts li	mmediately.	442	0	0	^
41916 File	9/22/24, 1:01:04	Object		544	143	23	
41915 Metadata	9/22/24, 1:01:00	Account (Account)	~	213	7	22	
41904 Data	9/22/24, 1:00:59	Fields		277	3,050	64	
<		BillingCity (Billing City)	• ×				>
Session Details Object		- 🕂 Add field		Reload Object Fields		C" Ref	fresh
Object / Event	Status Sta	r		Updated Dow	nloaded	Deleted	000
OmniDataPackShare	Success 9/2	2		0	-	0	^
CustomBrand	Success 9/2	2		0	-	0	
FlowOrchestrationStepIns	Success 9/2	2		0	_	0	
MlFeatureValueMetric	Success 9/2	2		0	_	0	
EntitlementTemplate	Success 9/2	2		0	_	0	
QuoteLineItemHistory	Success 9/2	2		0	_	0	
		Run	Close				V

Reloading Metadata

If you want to back up missing metadata items, you must reload the metadata:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab and click the link in the **Status** column.
- 2. Choose the latest backup job session and click Reload Metadata.

After you click **Reload Metadata**, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will immediately start a reload job and compare backed-up data in the product database with data currently stored in Salesforce. If Veeam Backup for Salesforce detects that the same metadata item exists both in Salesforce and in the product database, the item will be skipped from processing; otherwise, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will back up the item.

Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive) c 2 🗸 🕴 🔔	Administrator	• 🕀 Engli	sh 🖌 💭	Config	uration
6 back	up-policy-7	nd3u@veeam.com										
Backup Sessio	ns Type A	11	✓ SI	now: All	<u>A</u> 8		Stop 🕨 R	estart i V	iew Details	👱 Download I	.ogs C'R	efresh
Session ID ↓	Туре	Start		Finish		Status	Message		API Usa	ge Created	Updated	000
3	Metadata	10/31/24, 8	3:19:02 PM	10/31/24, 8:1	9:49 PM	Success	-		1	94 1,934	0	
2	Data	10/31/24, 8	3:19:02 PM	10/31/24, 8:2	1:10 PM	Success	-		3	53 10,240	0	
1	File	10/31/24, 8	3:19:02 PM	10/31/24, 8:1	9:20 PM	Success	-		1	09 20	8	
												•
Session Detail	s Object / Ev	ent	٩	Show:	AII 🛇 🔺	© ×	🦹 View Det	ails 🚺 🕻 Rela	<u>مط Metadata</u> سال		C' R	efresh
Object / Event	Sta	atus	Start ↓	D	uration	Message	c	reated	Updated	Downloaded	Deleted	000
WorkflowRule	0	Success	10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0	0:00:00	_		1	0	_	0	â
WorkflowFieldUp	date 📀	Success	10/31/24.8:19	-19 DM 0								
			10.51121,0111	.40 FIVI 0	0:00:00	_		1	0	_	0	
Workflow	0	Success	10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0	0:00:00	_		1	0	-	0	1
Workflow WebLink	0 0	Success Success	10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0	0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00	- - -		1 1 10	0	_ _ _	0	
Workflow WebLink ValidationRule	0 0 0	Success Success Success	10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0	0:00:00 D:00:00 D:00:00 D:00:00	 		1 1 10 1	0 0 0		0 0 0	
Workflow WebLink ValidationRule TopicsForObjects	0 0 0	Success Success Success Success	10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0	0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00	- - - -		1 1 10 1 38	0 0 0 0		0 0 0 0	
Workflow WebLink ValidationRule TopicsForObjects SharingRules	0 0 0 0	Success Success Success Success Success	10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19 10/31/24, 8:19	:48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0 :48 PM 0	0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00 0:00:00	- - - - -		1 10 1 38 88	0 0 0 0 0	- - - - - -	0 0 0 0 0	

Removing Backup Policies

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove a backup policy from the configuration database if you no longer need it. Note that the backed-up data will not be automatically deleted from the product database when you remove the policy.

To remove a backup policy, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Backup** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the backup policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary backup policy.

You can filter backup policies displayed on the **Backup** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. In the Delete Confirmation window, click Remove to acknowledge the operation.

Backup	Restore Browse Arcl	nive		(P)RND ~	Administrator 🗸 🌐 Eng	lish 🗸 💭 🛛 🏟 Co	nfiguration
Policy name	Q Show:	All 🔮 🔺	8 0 ×				
🕂 Add 🛛 🥕 Edit	Nun Stop	O Disable	i View Details				
Policy Name	Salesforce Alias	Status	Schedule	Salesforce User	Created Date ↓	Last Run Date	000
backup-policy-464	RGB	Success	U Weekly	vbsf_cp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:13:53 PM	11/2/22, 1:14:05 PM	
backup-policy-461	RGB - VM-FR (production)	Success	O Disabled	mlp@company.com	11/2/22, 1:11:03 PM	11/2/22, 1:11:16 PM	
backup-policy-454	VeRGB - Puertos (producti	Success	ሪ Weekly	sara.baker@company	10/25/22, 11:45:30 PM	11/2/22, 1:00:11 AM	

Viewing Backup Policy Details

After you create backup policies, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the policies on the **Backup** tab. Users assigned any role can see information on backup policies created for Salesforce organizations to which data they have access.

You can filter backup policies displayed on the **Backup** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

Each policy in the list is described with the following set of properties:

- **Policy Name** the name of the backup policy.
- Salesforce Alias the name of the protected Salesforce organization displayed in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI. To change the Salesforce alias, follow the instructions provided in section Editing Organizations.
- **Status** the status of the latest backup job session. Note that Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not display statuses of encryption job sessions.

To see all policy sessions, click the link in the **Status** column. For more information, see Viewing Backup Policy Sessions.

- **Schedule** the name or status of the schedule configured for the backup policy.
- Salesforce User the name of a Salesforce account specified during the policy configuration.
- **Org Type** the type of the Salesforce protected organization.
- Salesforce ID the ID assigned to the organization in Salesforce.
- Salesforce URL the URL of the protected Salesforce organization.
- **Company** the name of a company to which the protected Salesforce organization belongs.
- Created Date the date and time when the backup policy was created.
- Last Run Date the date and time when the latest backup policy session started.

TIP

You can view settings configured for a specific backup policy. To do that, select the necessary backup policy and click **View Details**.

ß	Backup	Restore Browse	Archive		Veeam 🖌 💄	Administrator 🗸 🖨 English	 ✓ (①) ✓ Configuration
5	Policy name	٩	Show: All 🔮 🔺	8			
+	Add 🥜 Edit	🗙 Delete 🕨 Run	Stop 🛇 Disab	e i <u>View Details</u>			
Po	licy Name	Salesforce Alias	Status	Schedule	Salesforce User	Org Type	Salesforce ID
ba	ckup-policy-351	Veeam - Veeam (p	oroducti 📀 Success	ပံ Custom schedule	is set Developer@veear	n.com Developer Edition	BFL8d000009qBFLEA2

Viewing Backup Policy Sessions

For each performed data protection operation, Veeam Backup for Salesforce starts a new session according to the created backup jobs, and stores the session details in the product database. You can track real-time statistics of all running and completed operations on the **Backup** tab. To view the full list of tasks executed during an operation, click the link in the **Status** column.

The **Backup Sessions** section of the **Backup** tab displays information on all sessions of the backup policy. Each session is described with the following set of properties:

- Session ID the ID assigned to the session.
- **Type** the type of a backup job launched during the session.
- **Start** the date and time when the session started.
- **Finish** the date and time when the session ended.
- **Status** the current status of the session.
- **Message** the explanation why Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process the records (applies only to sessions with the *Warning* and *Error* statuses).
- **Processed Objects** the total number of objects processed during the session.
- **API Usage** the total number of API calls sent during the session.
- Inserted the total number of new Salesforce records added to the backup scope during the session.
- Updated the total number of Salesforce records updated in Salesforce during the session.
- **Deleted** the total number of Salesforce records deleted from Salesforce during the session.
- Failed the total number of Salesforce records that Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process.
- **Total** the total number of Salesforce records processed during the session.
- **Run Type** the type of the job run (defines whether the policy has been launched manually or automatically by schedule).
- **Schedule** the name of the schedule according to which the backup job has been launched.

The **Session Details** section of the **Backup** tab displays information on all objects included in a specific policy session. Each object is described with the following set of properties:

- **Object / Event** the name of the backed-up object.
- Status the current status of the task.
- Start the date and time when Veeam Backup for Salesforce started a new task to process the object.
- Finish the date and time when Veeam Backup for Salesforce completed the task.
- **Duration** the duration of the task.
- **Message** the explanation why Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process the records (applies only to sessions with the *Warning* and *Error* statuses).
- **API Usage** the total number of API calls sent during the task.
- Inserted the total number of new Salesforce records added to the backup scope during the task.
- **Updated** the total number of Salesforce records updated in Salesforce during the task.

- **Downloaded** the total number of Salesforce files added to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce file repository during the task.
- **Deleted** the total number of records deleted from Salesforce during the task.
- Failed the total number of Salesforce records that Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process.
- **Total** the total number of Salesforce records processed during the task.

TIP

If you want to view logs of a specific backup session, select the session and click **Download Logs**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will collect the session logs and save them as a single .ZIP archive to the default download folder on the local machine.

Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive					Veeam RND1 🗸 🛛	Administrator	 ✓ ⊕ Eng 	glish 🗸 🛛		Configuration
e backu	p-policy-1	nd3 (USA670S)											
Backup Session	s Type A	JI	~	Show: All	⊘ 🛦 🤅	3 0	×	Stop Festar	t i View De	etails	⊻ Dowr	nload Logs	(Refresh
Session ID	Туре	Start ↓		Finish		St	atus	Message		API Usage	Created	Updated	Deleted 🚥
12	Validate	6/15/24, 1	0:42:11 PM	6/15/24,	10:42:43 PM	0	Success	_		207	0	0	0
10	Data	6/15/24, 1	0:00:21 PM	6/15/24,	10:02:11 PM	4	Warning	-		75	0	1	1
11	File	6/15/24, 1	0:00:20 PM	6/15/24,	10:00:43 PM	0	Success	_		22	11	1	0
9	Metadata	6/15/24, 1	0:00:20 PM	6/15/24,	10:01:12 PM	0	Success	-		178	0	0	0
Session Details			Q	Show:	AII 🛇 🛦	8 0	×	i <u>View Details</u>	🔁 Reload Obj	ect Fields			C ^{ar} Refresh
Object / Event	Sta	atus	Start		Duration	,	Aessage	0	Created	Updated	Downloaded	De	eleted 👓
UserRole	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:01		-		0	0	-		0
xkffmkke_c	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		-		0	0	-		0
zqoihqzc_c	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		-		0	0	_		0
WorkThanks	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		_		0	0	_		0
WorkOrderLineIter	n 📀	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		_		0	0	-		0
WorkBadgeDefiniti	on 🥝	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		_		0	0	_		0
WorkOrder	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		-		0	0	-		0
WorkBadge	0	Success	6/15/24, 10:	42:41 PM	00:00:00		_		0	0	_		0

Backup Job Types

When creating a backup policy, you configure the default backup schedule according to which Veeam Backup for Salesforce will back up the Salesforce organization. You can also enable custom schedules in the backup policy settings to additionally protect specific groups of objects. The configured schedules are further used by the product to create backup jobs of 3 different types:

- **Data job** this job type is used to back up object data of the protected Salesforce organization. Data jobs run according to each configured backup schedule (both custom and default). To learn how to configure backup schedules, see Creating Backup Policies.
- **Metadata job** this job type is used to back up metadata of the protected Salesforce organization. Metadata jobs run according to default backup schedules only.
- File job this job type is used to back up files and attachments of the protected Salesforce organization. File jobs run according to default backup schedules and only if you enable backup of files and attachments in backup policy settings. To learn how to enable this functionality, see Creating Backup Policies.

Additionally, Veeam Backup for Salesforce periodically runs the following types of backup jobs:

- Validate job this job type is used to compare backed-up data in the product database with data currently stored in Salesforce, that is, to detect hard-deleted items and mark them as deleted in the product database. Validate jobs automatically run weekly at the same time for each enabled backup policy. To learn how to enable backup policies, see Disabling and Enabling Backup Policies.
- **Reload job** this job type is used to upload missing record fields and files to PostgreSQL databases and file repositories. Reload jobs are launched manually with no regard to backup schedules. To learn how to run a reload job, see Reloading Fields and Files.
- **Encryption job** this job type is used to encrypt record fields and files of the protected Salesforce organization. Encryption jobs run according to the configured encryption settings but only for those backup policies that have already been used to protect fields and files (meaning these items already have backups) and that previously had the encryption functionality disabled.

If you disable encryption for a backup policy, the next run of the encryption job will decrypt data that has been previously encrypted. To learn how to disable encryption, see Editing Backup Policies.

NOTES

- For each object specified while configuring encryption settings, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs a separate encryption job.
- If an encryption job completes with failure, the job is automatically restarted in an hour. The product will continue to restart the job every hour until it completes successfully.

Backup	Restore	Browse)Veeam RND1 💊	Admini	strator 🗸 🌘	English 🖌 💭) 🛛 🔅 Cont	figuration
e backı	up-policy-1 nd	3 (USA670S) natalia.dubovki	na@veeam.com.nd3							
Backup Session	ns Type Data	~	Show: All 🥥	<u>▲</u> ③ ⊙ ×	Sto	Restart	i View Deta	ils 👱 Downlo	ad Logs 🔿 🖓	Refresh
Session ID	Туре 🕇	Start	Finish	Sta	tus	Message	Pr A	PI Usage Created	Updated	000
3	Data	9/20/24, 3:27:01 PM	9/20/24, 3:28:	52 PM 🔒	Warning	-	350	144 0	0	
6	Data	9/20/24, 3:30:43 PM	9/20/24, 3:31:	39 PM 🔺	Warning	-	350	129 0	0	
7	Data	9/20/24, 3:33:48 PM	9/20/24, 3:34:4	44 PM 🔺	Warning	-	350	72 0	0	
2	Data	9/20/24, 3:23:07 PM	9/20/24, 3:24:	35 PM 🔺	Warning	-	350	343 9,556	0	
< Session Details	Object / Event	c	Show: A	II 🗢 🛦 😒 () ×	View Details	Reload Obje	ct Fields	C	> Refresh
Object / Event	Status	Start ↓	Fir	nish	Duration	м	API Usage	Created	Updated	Do oco
acmvprbaShare	🔮 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
cgqxrsbk_c	🕑 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
AccountHistory	🕑 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
Orderitem	Sue Sue	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
ForecastingSource	eDefiniti 🤡 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
dzhwmjra_Histor	y 🔮 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
usjrznqx_History	📀 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	
rldkfbcpHistory	📀 Su	ccess 9/20/24,	3:28:23 PM 9/2	20/24, 3:28:24 PM	00:00:00	-	0	0	0	

Viewing Backed-Up Data

NOTES

This functionality is available to Administrators, Backup Operators and Restore Operators only.

On the **Browse** tab, you can view backed-up data of all protected Salesforce organizations:

- 1. Navigate to the **Browse** tab.
- 2. Select a Salesforce organization whose object records you want to view.

For an organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Managing Salesforce Organizations and must have a backup.

3. Select a Salesforce root object whose records you want to view.

For a Salesforce object to be displayed in the list of available root objects, it must have a backup. If the list does not contain the necessary object, the object either does not have a backup or cannot be restored. The object may not have a backup for the following reasons:

- $\circ~$ The object was excluded from the backup policy that protects the Salesforce organization to which this object belongs.
- $\circ\;$ The Salesforce user whose permissions are used for backup operations does not have access to the object.
- Backup of the object is not supported in the current product version. For more information, see Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.
- 4. Choose records that you want to view. To be able to choose records, you must first specify filtering conditions to display records by creation date:
 - If you select the Latest option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display the latest record versions only.
 - If you select the **Modified Date** option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display all record versions for a specific time period. To modify the time period, click the **Schedule** icon in the **Date** field.

After you specify the filtering conditions, click **Search** – Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display all records that meet these conditions. If you want to restore any of the records or record fields, select check boxes next to the necessary records, click **Start Restore** and complete the **Restore Records** or **Restore Field Values** wizard as described in section Creating Restore Jobs.

You can also choose the version of each record that will be restored - to do that, click the link in the **Version** column and select the necessary record version from the **Restore point** drop-down list.

TIPS

- To help you choose a version, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays both the content of the selected backed-up record and the content of the record currently stored in Salesforce. If you want to view only those record fields that have changed since the backup was created, set the **Compare changes** toggle to *On*.
- If the selected records contain encrypted fields, only users assigned the *Administrator* and *Backup Operator* roles will be able to view and compare values of these fields.

By default, you can select up to 500,000 of records for one restore session. To change this limit, modify the ui.restore.max.selected.records parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

Configuring Filtering Settings

Consider that Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the maximum number of 1000 records per page. If you want to apply specific search conditions and reduce the number of search results, or if you want to select specific Salesforce fields to be displayed in the search results, click **Customize** in the **Filters and display fields** field.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. When adding conditions, consider the following:

- If you want to search for records with null field values, use the is *null* operator. Using the *equals* operator in this case is not supported.
- If you want to search for a list of records, you can use the *in* operator and specify the IDs of the necessary records using a comma-separated list.
- If you want to search for a record but you do not have any information on this record except for the fact that it is linked to a specific object, you can use the lookup relationship field to filter all records linked to this object. To do that, specify the ID of the necessary object in the **Value** field.
- If you want to search for records that have been archived, use the **vsf_archived (Archive Restore Point)** field.

NOTES

- The time required to process a request depends on the operator you use for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.
- The **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with, ends with, equals, in, not equal to, not in.*

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, a record is displayed in the search results only if all the specified conditions are met. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND (2 OR 3) AND NOT 4*.

IMPORTANT

If a record that you want to restore contains encrypted fields, you will not be able to specify filters for these fields.
Backup Restore Bro	Archive	(🛱 Veeam RND1 🗸 🔹 A		Configuration
UPDATE: Veeam Backup for Salesforce n	Select Version To Restore Compare record versions between back	ups and live data. Select the version you want to rest	ore.	×
Select Organization:	Restore point: 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	✓ ← Previous Next →	Latest →	
Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)	8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	Jun and a		
	Filter by text 7/31/24, 5:10:43 PM	Ompare changes: Off		
Search on this page	Field	Restore Point 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	Production Data 8/16/24, 3:27:22 PM	
D Version	Account Number AccountNumber	null	null	^
Selected: 0 of 17 (Browse results are limited	Account Source	null	null	
0017400000HtMuRAAV Latest	AccountSource		1.0011	
0017400000HtNYzAAN Latest	Annual Revenue Annual Revenue	123,123	123,123	
0017400000HttetAAB Latest	Billing City			
0017400000II0WSAAZ Latest	BillingCity	Berlin	Berlin	
0017400000ImddtAAB Latest	Billing Country Billing Country	Germany	Germany	
001VF0000044ETWYA2 Latest	Dilling Country			
001VF000004p4osYAA Latest	BillingGeocodeAccuracy BillingGeocodeAccuracy	null	null	
001VF000006meanYAA Latest	Billing Latitude	null	null	
001VF000006mY42YAE Latest	BillingLatitude			
001VF000006mYLiYAM Latest	Billing Longitude BillingLongitude	null	null	
001VF000006qRNFYA2 Latest	Billing Zip/Postal Code	10000	10000	
001VF000006ytPeYAI Latest	BillingPostalCode			~
001VF0000076UNZYA2 Latest	Apply Cancel			

Performing Salesforce Restore

To recover backed-up data, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs restore jobs. When you create a restore job, it is created as a draft that you can further edit, remove, start and clone. Once the restore job is started, it can be only stopped or cloned.

NOTE

Only users assigned the *Administrator*, *Backup Operator* or *Restore Operator* role can perform restore operations in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. However, users assigned the *Backup Operator* or *Restore Operator* role can create and run restore jobs within their permission scope only – that is, for companies and organizations whose data they can access.

Creating Restore Jobs

You can create drafts of restore jobs that you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to perform. After you create a draft, you can start the job right after you finish the restore job configuration wizard or later as described in section Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs.

NOTE

Restore job drafts older than 7 days are automatically removed by Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce offers the following restore options:

- Restore records
- Restore field values
- Restore files
- Restore metadata

Restoring Records

Record restore jobs allow you to restore earlier versions of modified or corrupted records and linked objects. To create a record restore job, perform the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Restore Records wizard.
- 2. Specify a name and description for the restore job.
- 3. Select Salesforce organizations.
- 4. Choose the data that will be restored.
- 5. Choose what attachments associated with the specified records will be restored.
- 6. Enable restore of object hierarchy.
- 7. Configure additional restore settings.
- 8. Check permissions.
- 9. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Launch Restore Records Wizard

To launch the **Restore Records** wizard:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to restore belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the **Restore Records** wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click **New Restore > Records**.

Backup Re	estore Brov	vse Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸	💄 Administrator 🗸	English 🗸		figuration
Organization: Veeam RN	D1 - ac (sandbox)	✓ Filter by	restore job name	Q Sho	w: All 🔮 🔺 🕄) (D) (E) (T)	Filter (None)		
📤 New Restore 👻	/ Edit Draft	🗍 Clone 🛛 🗙 Delete Dra	ift 🕨 Run 🔳	Stop 🧵 View Def	tails 🛛 🛃 Settings 🗸				
Records Fields	Туре	Status ↓	Created Date	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By	000
Files									
Metadata ob-32	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 7:50:49	9/17/24, 7:50:58	9/17/24, 7:51:07	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-1	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:38:37	9/17/24, 12:38:55	9/17/24, 12:39:04	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-2	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:39:39	9/17/24, 12:40:21	9/17/24, 12:40:29	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:43:58	9/17/24, 1:44:00	9/17/24, 1:44:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-3	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:40:41	9/17/24, 1:11:09	9/17/24, 1:11:18	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:41:39	9/17/24, 1:42:02	9/17/24, 1:42:14	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-4	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:25:43	9/17/24, 1:26:04	9/17/24, 1:26:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-10	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:06:35	9/17/24, 2:06:45	9/17/24, 2:06:52	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-9	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:55:13	9/17/24, 1:56:07	9/17/24, 1:56:15	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:11:24	9/17/24, 2:12:06	9/17/24, 2:12:26	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-26	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 4:44:48	9/17/24, 4:44:50	9/17/24, 4:45:17	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:15:44	9/17/24, 2:15:46	9/17/24, 2:15:53	admin	admin	admin	

Step 2. Specify Restore Job Info

At the **Name** step of the wizard, use the **Job name** and **Job details or reason for restore** fields to specify a name for the new restore job and to provide a description for future reference. The maximum length of the job name is 100 characters.

Backup Re	estore Browse Archive (🛱 (P)RND 🗸 🛦 Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🗸 💭	
E Restore Re	COIDS restore-job-159061	
Name	Restore Job Name	
Organization	Inis information will be included in the audit log of the restore, it may be helpful to reference the incoming ticket of work item. Job name:	
Data	restore-job-159061	
Files	Job details or reason for restore: restoring org records	
Hierarchy		
Options		
Verification		
Summary		
	Next Cancel	

Step 3. Select Organization

At the **Organization** step of the wizard, use the **Restore from** drop-down list to select a Salesforce organization whose records you want to restore. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1.

By default, the records are restored to the same Salesforce organization. However, you can choose to restore records to another organization (for example, if you want to seed a sandbox organization with backed -up data of another organization) — to do that, use the **Restore to** drop-downlist. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1 and be compatible with the organization whose records you want to restore. This means that you can restore from a production or sandbox organization only to its sandbox copies.

IMPORTANT

- When you restore an object record to another organization, make sure that metadata of the object that you want to restore matches metadata of the object in the target organization. If metadata is missing or does not match, you must first create a dedicated metadata restore job.
- When you restore an object record that contains encrypted fields to the same organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce decrypts and restores the fields. However, if you restore this record from a production to a sandbox organization, the product does not decrypt or restore the encrypted fields – unless you provide override values for these fields.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive (P)RND V Administrator V (D) (O) Configuration
← Restore Rec	Cords restore-job-159061
Name	Select Salesforce Organization
Organization	Restore data to the same Salesforce organization or to another sandbox.
Data	Restore trom: (P)RND - preprod (sandbox)
Files	Restore to:
Hierarchy	(P)RND - preprod (sandbox)
merarchy	(P)RND - ar (sandbox)
Options	(P)RND - preprod (sandbox)
Verification	
Summary	
	Previous Next Cancel

Step 4. Choose Data to Restore

At the **Data** step of the wizard, do the following:

1. Select a Salesforce root object whose records you want to restore.

For a Salesforce object to be displayed in the list of available root objects, it must have a backup. If the list does not contain the necessary object, the object either does not have a backup or cannot be restored. The object may not have a backup for the following reasons:

- The object was excluded from the backup policy that protects the Salesforce organization to which this object belongs.
- The Salesforce user whose permissions are used for backup operations does not have access to the object.
- Backup of the object is not supported in the current product version. For more information, see Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.
- 2. Choose records that you want to restore. To be able to choose records, you must first specify filtering conditions to display records by creation date:
 - If you select the Latest option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display the latest record versions only.
 - If you select the **Backup Date** option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display the latest record versions prior to a specific date. To modify the date, click the **Schedule** icon in the **Date** field.
 - If you select the **Modified Date** option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display all record versions for a specific time period. To modify the time period, click the **Schedule** icon in the **Date** field.

After you specify the filtering conditions, click **Search** and select check boxes next to the records that you want to restore. You can also choose the version of each record that will be restored — to do that, click the link in the **Version** column and select the necessary record version from the **Restore point** drop-down list.

TIPS

- To help you choose a version, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays both the content of the selected backed-up record and the content of the record currently stored in Salesforce. If you want to view only those record fields that have changed since the backup was created, set the Compare changes toggle to On.
- If the selected records contain encrypted fields, only users assigned the *Administrator* and *Backup Operator* roles will be able to view and compare values of these fields.

By default, you can select up to 500,000 of records for one restore session. To change this limit, modify the ui.restore.max.selected.records parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

3. [Applies only when restoring to a non-production organization] If you want to apply a masking template to the restored data, click the link in the **Data masking template** field. For a template to be displayed in the list of available templates, it must be created by an Administrator as described in section Managing Data Masking Templates.

Configuring Filtering Settings

Consider that Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the maximum number of 500 records per page. If you want to apply specific search conditions and reduce the number of search results, or if you want to select specific Salesforce fields to be displayed in the search results, click **Customize** in the **Filters and display fields** field.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. When adding conditions, consider the following:

- If you want to search for records with null field values, use the is *null* operator. Using the *equals* operator in this case is not supported.
- If you want to search for a list of records, you can use the *in* operator and specify the IDs of the necessary records using a comma-separated list.
- If you want to search for a record but you do not have any information on this record except for the fact that it is linked to a specific object, you can use the lookup relationship field to filter all records linked to this object. To do that, specify the ID of the necessary object in the **Value** field.
- If you want to search for records that have been archived, use the **vsf_archived (Archive Restore Point)** field.

NOTES

- The time required to process a request depends on the operator you use for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.
- The **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with, ends with, equals, in, not equal to, not in.*

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, a record is displayed in the search results only if all the specified conditions are met. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND (2 OR 3) AND NOT 4*.

IMPORTANT

If a record that you want to restore contains encrypted fields, you will not be able to specify filters for these fields.

Backup Re	store Bro	wse Archive	(IIII) Veeam 🗸 💧 Ad	dministrator 🗸 🖨 English 🖌 💭	Configuration
E Restore Re	cords restore-	job-29			
Name Organization	Select Rec Use filters to	Select Version To Restore Compare record versions between back	kups and live data. Select the version you want to rest	ore.	×
Data	Object: Account (Ar	Restore point: 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	✓ ← Previous Next →	Latest ->+	
Files	Search	Filter by text 7/31/24, 5:10:43 PM	ompare changes: Off		
Hierarchy		Field	Restore Point 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	Production Data 8/16/24, 3:25:38 PM	
Options	12 records f	Account Number AccountNumber	null	null	^
Verification	Selected: (Account Source AccountSource	nuli	null	
Summary	001W	Annual Revenue AnnualRevenue	123,123	123,123	
	001W	Billing City BillingCity	Berlin	Berlin	
	001W	Billing Country BillingCountry	Germany	Germany	
	001W	Billing Geocode Accuracy BillingGeocodeAccuracy	null	null	
	001W	Billing Latitude BillingLatitude	null	null	
	001W	Billing Longitude Billing Longitude	null	null	
	001W	Billing Zip/Postal Code BillingPostalCode	10000	10000	~
		Apply Cancel			

Step 5. Choose Attachments to Restore

At the **Files** step of the wizard, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to restore files associated with the records selected at step 4. To do that, set the **Restore attachments** toggle to *On* and apply filters to choose files that you want to restore. If you do not specify any filtering conditions, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will restore all files associated with the selected record.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. Note that the time required to process a request depends on the operator you use — for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.

For a file to be displayed in the list of available files, it must be associated with the selected record and have a backup.

IMPORTANT

- If you choose to restore an encrypted file to a production organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will decrypt the file and fully restore its content. However, if you choose to restore an encrypted file to a sandbox organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not decrypt the file for security reasons and therefore will create only an empty copy of this file.
- Using this type of restore, you can restore only the latest version of a file. If you want to restore any of the previous file versions, you must create a dedicated file restore job.

Backup Res	ore Browse Archive		AB-test	 Administra 			
← Restore Rec	Drds restore-job-271403						
Name	Restore Attachments	ent content versions for selected records		1 file will be restored Review files that will be	e restored.		
Organization	Restore attachments: On (Search on this page			
Data				File ID	Is Deleted	File Extension	Created
Files	Select files to restore			0688d00000Th	False	png	3/26/24, 9:17:58
Hierarchy	Specify filters to narrow down the list o	f restored files					
Options	Field: Operato	r: Value:					
Verification	Id (File ID) 👻 starts	vith 💙 0688	×				
Summary	Add Condition						
	Apply Cancel						
		Previous	Next	Tancel			

Step 6. Enable Hierarchy Restore

At the **Hierarchy** step of the wizard, Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to restore parent and child records linked to the records selected at step 4. While restoring hierarchy, the product analyzes all lookup relationship fields of the records and compares backed-up data with the current Salesforce data. For more information, see How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Restores Object Hierarchy.

IMPORTANT

- If you have enabled restore of files and attachments at step 5, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not restore files and attachments of child and parent records. If you want to restore files and attachments of child and parent records, create a dedicated file restore job.
- When restoring a record from the Salesforce Recycle Bin, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically restore child records that are linked using master-detail relationships even if the hierarchy restore option is disabled.
- If you have instructed Veeam Backup for Salesforce to mask data at step 4, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will also mask the data of child and parent records.

To restore lookup relationships, set the **Restore records hierarchy** toggle to *On* and do the following:

1. In the **Parent hierarchy** section, select the maximum level of the parent object hierarchy that will be restored for all records. By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce restores the 1st level parent records only.

The restore parent hierarchy settings are applied to every record in the session and not only to the records selected at step 4. It means that Veeam Backup for Salesforce will restore the record and then will verify lookup links to its parent records. This process will repeat for all the selected child records.

NOTE

When restoring from a production to a sandbox organization, it is recommended that you restore at least 2 levels of the parent hierarchy.

- 2. In the **Child hierarchy** section, configure the following settings:
 - a. In the **Child hierarchy levels** field, select the depth level of the child object hierarchy that will be restored for all records.
 - b. Click the link in the **Exclude objects** field to choose whether you want to exclude specific child objects from restore. Note that Veeam Backup for Salesforce will also exclude all child objects associated with the objects that you specified.
 - c. Click the link in the Customize records field to customize child hierarchy settings for individual records. To configure settings for a record, click Customize and select check boxes next to the objects whose records you want to restore in the Customize Hierarchy Restore window. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will restore records of the child objects that you have selected only if you do not expand the object node, child objects under the node remain unselected and records of those objects will not be restored.
- 3. In the Hierarchy data consistency section, configure the following settings:
 - a. From the Validation rule drop-down list, choose when to stop updating the child records:
 - To stop proceeding to deeper levels of the hierarchy if a child record exists in Salesforce, select *Record exists in Salesforce.* This child record will be the last updated record. Keep in mind that it will be updated according to the selected **Records restore rule** option.

- To stop proceeding to deeper levels of the hierarchy if a child record exists in Salesforce and the lookup field value matches the backed-up value, select *Record exists in Salesforce and parent lookup matches backup data*. This child record will be the last updated record. Keep in mind that it will be updated according to the selected **Records restore rule** option.
- To stop proceeding to deeper levels of the hierarchy if a child record exists in Salesforce and the values of all fields of the record match the backed-up values, select *Record exists in Salesforce and all fields match backup data*.
- To proceed to deeper levels of the hierarchy until the specified child hierarchy level is reached or all the child records with the configured custom hierarchy settings are updated, select *Always check entire hierarchy tree.*
- b. From the **Records restore rule** drop-down list, choose what fields will be updated for existing child records:
 - To restore deleted records without updating the parent lookup fields of the existing child records, select *Restore deleted records. Do not update existing records*.
 - To update only the parent lookup fields of the existing child records, select *Update lookup relationships and restore deleted records*.
 - To update all fields of the existing child records without replacing current field values in Salesforce with null, select *Update all field values, ignoring empty values, and restore deleted records*.
 - To update fields of the existing child records and replace current field values in Salesforce with null, select *Update all filed values, including empty values, and restore deleted records*.

NOTE

The product restores child and parent records of the versions that you selected at step 4. This means that if you select to restore the latest version of a root record, the product restores the latest versions of related child and parents records. However, if you select to restore a specific version of the root record, the product restores the same or previous versions of the related child and parent records.

${\bf B}$	Backup	Restore	Browse			Veeam RND1	✓ Administrator ✓	English 🖌 💭	
\bigotimes	Restore	e Records	restore-job-4						
Name	zation	Rest	tore Recor pre a hierarci	Customize Hierarch Customize hierarchy res	y Restore itore for individual records.	Click the link to customize.			×
Data		Rest	ore records h			Q			
Files		Pare	nt hierarchy	Record ID	Custom Hierarchy	Account Name 🕇		Last Modified Date	Deleted
1.12	h	Upda	ate or restore	001VF000008QEM5	Customize Account Hier	archy	>	7/17/24, 3:35:13 PM	false
Hierarc	ny	Pare	nt hierarchy	001VF000008E9DJY/	Record: 0017400000Imddt/	AAB (Attachment 2/1/0)		7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
Options	5	Child	hierarchy	0017400000ImddtA	Select Visible Objects	O Deselect All		7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
Verifica	tion	Unda	ate or restore	001VF000006mY42	 Account 			7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
		opu		001VF0000076UNZY	✓ ✓ FeedItem		All (1)	6/6/24, 4:02:24 PM	false
Summa	згу	Child	l hierarchy le	0017400000HtMuR/	✓ FeedAttachmen	it	All (2)	7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
		Exclu	ide objects:	0017400000HtNYzA				7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
		Cust	omize recorc	001VF000004p4osY	Remove Customization		Save Cancel	7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
				001VF000006mean				7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
		Hier	archy data c	001VF000007EGnYYAV	V 🗋 Not customized	Rocky 8 Linux		7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
		Child	l records in S	001VF000006ytPeYAI	Not customized	d run1		6/6/24, 4:27:42 PM	false
				001VF0000044ETWYA	Not customized	d Test Hierarchy Tree		7/17/24, 3:34:34 PM	false
				Apply Can	el				

Step 7. Configure Additional Restore Settings

At the **Options** step of the wizard, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to automatically replace current field values in Salesforce with *null*, overwrite field values manually, map fields of backed-up records to specific fields in Salesforce, and choose the way you want to deactivate blocking automation in Salesforce.

Automatic Field Overriding Settings

In the **Data consistency** section, you can choose whether you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to update all existing records and overwrite field values, or to restore only those records that have been deleted from Salesforce without updating the existing records. If you select the **Restore deleted records**. **Overwrite existing records** option, you can also decide whether you want to replace non-empty field values of the existing object records in Salesforce with empty (*null*) values of the backed-up records.

Manual Field Overriding Settings

In the **Field values** section, you can choose whether you want to override specific field values in the restored records (for example, in case of sandbox seeding when you need to mask sensitive data). To do that, click the link in the **Override field values** field, choose a field whose value you want to override and provide a new value.

For a record field to be displayed in the list of available fields, this record must be added to the restore job as described at step 4. Keep in mind that if you restore an object record that contains encrypted fields to the same organization, these fields will be grayed out.

TIPS

- When overriding time values, keep in mind that even though the management server and databases use the UTC time zone for all operations, Salesforce adjusts the time set for every Salesforce user according to the time zone settings defined for this user. To learn how to change default time zones in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If you have instructed Veeam Backup for Salesforce to mask data at step 4, the data will be first masked and then overridden.

Field Mapping Settings

In the **Field values** section, you can choose whether you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to populate fields of a restored record with values of a specific backed-up record. To do that, click the link in the **Map old fields to new fields** field, choose an object whose field values you want to overwrite, and map the necessary backed-up record fields to fields in the target Salesforce organization. For an object or a field to be displayed in the list of available items, it must have a backup.

To export the list that contains all mapped fields as a single .CSV file, click **Export to CSV**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the file with the exported data to the default download folder on the local machine.

IMPORTANT

- For security reasons, mapping of encrypted fields is not supported.
- Overriding and mapping fields of the *Text (Encrypted)* type is not supported.

Blocking Automation Settings

Business logic and automated rules configured in Salesforce can block Veeam Backup for Salesforce restore operations or trigger undesirable side processes. You can choose either to manually deactivate Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers in Salesforce or to instruct the product to bypass all blocking automation while performing a restore operation. To do that, select one of the options in the **Turn off automation** section:

- Select the I will manually turn off all blocking automation option, if you are a Salesforce Administrator and want to deactivate Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers in Salesforce manually.
- Select the **Automatically turn off all automation** option to automatically update Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers so that they are bypassed while the product performs the restore operation without impacting the Salesforce functionality. When you choose this option for a restore job for the first time, updating blocking automation will take significant time to complete. However, as the updates will be kept in Salesforce, all further restore operations will run faster.
- Select the **Temporarily turn off all automation** option to automatically update Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers so that they are bypassed while the product performs the current restore operation only without impacting the Salesforce functionality. All changes made by the product will be reverted after the restore operation is over. Note that updating blocking automation and reverting the changes may take significant time to complete.

Backup Res	store Browse (Provide the state of the state
Restore Rec	rords restore-job-3
Name	Additional Restore Options
Organization	Customize now certain data or helds should be handled during restore.
Data	Data consistency
Tiles.	Choose if you want to overwrite or skip existing records in Salesforce. Applies to records selected at "Data" step.
Files	Records restore rule: Restore deleted records. Overwrite existing records. 🗸
Hierarchy	Allow empty values in backup to replace current field values in Salesforce.
Options	Field values
Verification	Override field values: 1 field will be overriden
Summary	Map old fields to new fields: 🚦 Not specified
	Turn off automation (workflows, flows, apex triggers and validation rules)
	I will manually turn off all blocking automation
	O Automatically turn off all automation
	O Temporarily turn off all automation
	Previous Next Cancel

Step 8. Check Permissions

At the **Verification** step of the wizard, verify whether the user that is used to perform the restore operation is assigned the permissions required to restore the selected Salesforce object. To do that, click the **Not verified yet** link and wait for the check to complete. If any of the permissions are missing, you must grant them in the Salesforce console manually as described in Salesforce documentation.

To export the list that contains all records selected at step 4 as a single .CSV file, click **Download CSV File**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the file with the exported data to the default download folder on the local machine.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive (P)RND ~ 🏝 Administrator ~ 💮 English ~ 💭 🏟 Configuration
Restore Rec	cords restore-job-159061
Name	Verify Permissions
Organization	Verifications step is optional, it provides you visionity in there are any issues infinediately blocking your restore.
Data	Quick check will verify any permission or data settings that can block your restore. This check does not guarantee that everything will be restored but can help avoid obvious issues.
Files	
Hierarchy	Download CSV File Export the list of records that will be restored from the backup at the root level.
Options	
Verification	
Summary	
	Previous Next In Cancel

Step 9. Finish Working with Wizard

At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Finish**.

If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start restore automatically after you complete the wizard, select the **Start the job after clicking the Finish button** check box. Otherwise, the job draft will be created, and you will have to manually run the job as described in section **Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs**.

TIP

To view all objects added to the restore session, click the link in the **Object** field.

Backup Res	tore Browse	(開 Veeam RND1 🗸	🛓 Administrator 🗸 🗍 🌐) English 🖌 💭	Configuration
E Restore Rec	ords restore-job-11				
Name	Hierarchy				
Organization Data Files	Parent hierarchy levels: Chiid hierarchy levels: Excluded objects: Customized records: Validation rule: Records restore rule:	1 Record exists in Salesforce and parent lookup matches backup data Update lookup relationships and restore deleted records			
Hierarchy	Fields override				
Options	Field Ownerld	Value 005jl7f456evea7ger			
(chicadon	Fields mapping				
Summary	Object Account	Field in Salesforce Field in Salesforce SillingCity ShippingCity			
	Options				
	Overwrite records: Restore empty values: Disable automation: Roll-back disable automation:	Yes No No			
		Previous Finish Cancel			

Restoring Field Values

IMPORTANT

Using this type of restore, you can restore field values only. If you want to restore the field itself, you must perform the metadata restore first.

To create a field value restore job, perform the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Restore Field Values wizard.
- 2. Specify a name and description for the restore job.
- 3. Select Salesforce organizations.
- 4. Select records whose field values you want to restore.
- 5. Select fields whose values will be restored.
- 6. Configure additional restore settings.
- 7. Check permissions.
- 8. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Launch Restore Field Values Wizard

To launch the **Restore Field Values** wizard:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to restore belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the **Restore Field Values** wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click New Restore > Fields.

Backup Re	estore Browse	Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸	💄 Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	(D) Configuration	
Organization: Veeam RN	ID1 - ac (sandbox)	✓ Filter	by restore job name	Q Sho	w: All 🛇 🛦 🔇	•	Filter (None)		
📤 New Restore 🐱	🎤 Edit Draft 🛛 🗍 C	lone 🗙 Delete D	raft 🕨 Run 🔳	Stop 🧃 🖞 View Det	ails 🛛 🔀 Settings 🗸				
Records	Туре	Status ↓	Created Date	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By 000	
Fields									
Files Metadata pb-32	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 7:50:49	9/17/24, 7:50:58	9/17/24, 7:51:07	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-1	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:38:37	9/17/24, 12:38:55	9/17/24, 12:39:04	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-2	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:39:39	9/17/24, 12:40:21	9/17/24, 12:40:29	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:43:58	9/17/24, 1:44:00	9/17/24, 1:44:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-3	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:40:41	9/17/24, 1:11:09	9/17/24, 1:11:18	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:41:39	9/17/24, 1:42:02	9/17/24, 1:42:14	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-4	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:25:43	9/17/24, 1:26:04	9/17/24, 1:26:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-10	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:06:35	9/17/24, 2:06:45	9/17/24, 2:06:52	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-9	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:55:13	9/17/24, 1:56:07	9/17/24, 1:56:15	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:11:24	9/17/24, 2:12:06	9/17/24, 2:12:26	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-26	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 4:44:48	9/17/24, 4:44:50	9/17/24, 4:45:17	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:15:44	9/17/24, 2:15:46	9/17/24, 2:15:53	admin	admin	admin	

Step 2. Specify Restore Job Info

At the **Name** step of the wizard, use the **Job name** and **Job details or reason for restore** fields to specify a name for the new restore job and to provide a description for future reference. The maximum length of the job name is 100 characters.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive 🐘 Veeam RND1 🗸 🏝 Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🗸 💭 🔅 Configuration
Restore Fiel	d Values restore-job-2
Name	Restore Job Name
Organization	This information will be included in the audit log of the restore. It may be helpful to reference the incoming ticket or work item.
Data	Restore Fields
Fields	Job details or reason for restore: Restoring field values 01
Options	
Verification	
Summary	
	Next U Cancel

Step 3. Select Organization

At the **Organization** step of the wizard, use the **Restore from** drop-down list to select a Salesforce organization whose field values you want to restore. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list, it must belong to the company specified at step 1.

By default, the field values are restored to the same Salesforce organization. However, you can choose to restore field values to another organization — to do that, use the **Restore to** drop-down list. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1 and be compatible with the organization whose field values you want to restore. This means that you can restore from a production or sandbox organization only to its sandbox copies.

IMPORTANT

When you restore an object record that contains encrypted fields to the same organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce decrypts and restores the fields. However, if you restore this record from a production to a sandbox organization, the product does not restore the encrypted fields – unless you provide override values for these fields.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive 🐘 Veeam RND1 🗸 🏝 Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🗸 💭 🏟 Configuration
← Restore Fiel	d Values Restore Fields
Name	Select Salesforce Organizations
Organization	Restore data to the same Salesforce organization or to another sandbox.
Data	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
Fields	Restore to:
Options	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
Verification	
Summary	
	Previous Cancel

Step 4. Choose Data to Restore

At the **Data** step of the wizard, do the following:

1. Select a Salesforce root object whose records you want to restore.

For a Salesforce object to be displayed in the list of available root objects, it must have a backup. If the list does not contain the necessary object, the object either does not have a backup or cannot be restored. The object may not have a backup for the following reasons:

- The object was excluded from the backup policy that protects the Salesforce organization to which this object belongs.
- $\circ~$ The Salesforce user whose permissions are used for backup operations does not have access to the object.
- Backup of the object is not supported in the current product version. For more information, see Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.
- 2. Choose records that you want to restore. To be able to choose records, you must first specify filtering conditions to display records by creation date:
 - If you select the Latest option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display the latest record versions only.
 - If you select the **Backup Date** option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display the latest record versions prior to a specific date. To modify the date, click the **Schedule** icon in the **Date** field.
 - If you select the **Modified Date** option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display all record versions for a specific time period. To modify the time period, click the **Schedule** icon in the **Date** field.

After you specify the filtering conditions, click **Search** and select check boxes next to the records that you want to restore. You can also choose the version of each record that will be restored — to do that, click the link in the **Version** column and select the necessary record version from the **Restore point** drop-down list.

TIPS

- To help you choose a version, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays both the content of the selected backed-up record and the content of the record currently stored in Salesforce. If you want to view only those record fields that have changed since the backup was created, set the Compare changes toggle to On.
- If the selected records contain encrypted fields, only users assigned the *Administrator* and *Backup Operator* roles will be able to view and compare values of these fields.

By default, you can select up to 500,000 of records for one restore session. To change this limit, modify the ui.restore.max.selected.records parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

3. [Applies only when restoring to a non-production organization] If you want to apply a masking template to the restored data, click the link in the **Data masking template** field. For a template to be displayed in the list of available templates, it must be created by an Administrator as described in section Managing Data Masking Templates.

Configuring Filtering Settings

Consider that Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the maximum number of 500 records per page. If you want to apply specific search conditions and reduce the number of search results, or if you want to select specific Salesforce fields to be displayed in the search results, click **Customize** in the **Filters and display fields** field.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. When adding conditions, consider the following:

- Veeam Backup for Salesforce automatically adds a condition that filters the records to show only existing Salesforce records. If you want to restore a record that was removed from Salesforce, you must perform the record restore first.
- If you want to restore a value of the field that was removed from Salesforce, you must perform the metadata restore first.
- If you want to search for records with null field values, use the is *null* operator. Using the *equals* operator in this case is not supported.
- If you want to search for a list of records, you can use the *in* operator and specify the IDs of the necessary records using a comma-separated list.
- If you want to search for a record but you do not have any information on this record except for the fact that it is linked to a specific object, you can use the lookup relationship field to filter all records linked to this object. To do that, specify the ID of the necessary object in the **Value** field.
- If you want to search for records that have been archived, use the **vsf_archived (Archive Restore Point)** field.

NOTES

- The time required to process a request depends on the operator you use for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.
- The **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with, ends with, equals, in, not equal to, not in.*

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, a record is displayed in the search results only if all the specified conditions are met. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND (2 OR 3) AND NOT 4*.

IMPORTANT

If a record that you want to restore contains encrypted fields, you will not be able to specify filters for these fields.

Backup	Restore Bro	wse Archive	(IIII) Veeam 🗸 🔺 Ad	iministrator 🗸 🜐 English 🖌 💭 🔅 Configurati	
Exercise Restore F	ield Values re	store-job-30			
Name	Select Rec	Select Version To Restore		:	×
Organization	Use filters to	Compare record versions between back	ups and live data. Select the version you want to rest	ore.	
Data	Object: Account (Ar	Restore point: 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	✓	Latest —H	
Fields	Search	8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM Filter by text 7/31/24, 5:10:43 PM	ompare changes: Off		
Options		Field	Restore Point 8/1/24, 5:01:55 PM	Production Data 8/16/24, 3:27:22 PM	
Verification	11 records f	Account Number AccountNumber	null	null	^
Summary		Account Source AccountSource	null	null	
	001W	Annual Revenue AnnualRevenue	123,123	123,123	
	001W	Billing City BillingCity	Berlin	Berlin	
	001W	Billing Country BillingCountry	Germany	Germany	
	001W	Billing Geocode Accuracy BillingGeocodeAccuracy	null	null	
	001W	Billing Latitude BillingLatitude	null	null	
	001W	Billing Longitude BillingLongitude	null	null	
	001W	Billing Zip/Postal Code BillingPostalCode	10000	10000	~
		Apply Cancel			

Step 5. Select Fields to Restore

At the **Fields** step of the wizard, choose fields whose values you want to restore for the selected records. Consider that only values of the fields that are defined by Salesforce as *updatable* can be restored. For example, you cannot restore values of the *read-only* or *formula* fields. These fields will be grayed out.

TIP

To restore a *Formula* field type, perform the metadata restore job.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive	1 🗸 🛛 Administra	ator 🗸 💮 Englis	h • (<u>(</u>)	Configuration	
Restore Fiel	d Values Restore Fields					
Name	Select Fields To Restore You can restore one or serveral fields at the same time.	The following field v You can choose older	values will be restored	on the Data step.		
Organization	Field name	Type in a value to filter				
Data	Name	Id †	Account Source	Billing City	Billing Country	
rields	Selected: 3 of 43	0017400000Ht	null	Yerevan	Armenia	
Options	AccountSource	0017400000Ht	null	Yerevan	Armenia	
	Account Source	0017400000Htt	null	null	null	
Verification	BillingCity Billing City	0017400000110	null	null	null	
Summary	BillingCountry Billing Country					
	BillingGeocodeAccuracy Billing Geocode Accuracy					
	BillingLatitude Billing Latitude					
	BillingLongitude Billing Longitude					
	BillingPostalCode Billing Zip/Postal Code					
	BillingState Billing State/Province					
	BillingStreet Billing Street	<			>	
	Previous	Cancel				

Step 6. Configure Additional Restore Settings

At the **Options** step of the wizard, you can instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to automatically replace current field values in Salesforce with *null*, overwrite field values manually, map fields of backed-up records to specific fields in Salesforce, and choose the way you want to deactivate blocking automation in Salesforce.

Automatic Field Overriding Settings

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce restores only those records that have been deleted from Salesforce without updating the existing records. In the **Data consistency** section, you can decide whether you want to replace non-empty field values of the existing object records in Salesforce with empty (*null*) values of the backed-up records.

Manual Field Overriding Settings

In the **Field values** section, you can choose whether you want to override specific field values in the restored layouts and new labels (for example, in case of sandbox seeding when you need to mask sensitive data). To do that, click the link in the **Override field values** field, choose a field whose value you want to override and provide a new value.

For a record field to be displayed in the list of available fields, this record must be added to the restore job as described at step 4. Keep in mind that if you restore an object record that contains encrypted fields to the same organization, these fields will be grayed out.

TIPS

- When overriding time values, keep in mind that even though the management server and databases use the UTC time zone for all operations, Salesforce adjusts the time set for every Salesforce user according to the time zone settings defined for this user. To learn how to change default time zones in Salesforce, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If you have instructed Veeam Backup for Salesforce to mask data at step 4, the data will be first masked and then overridden.

Field Mapping Settings

In the **Field values** section, you can choose whether you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to populate fields of a restored record with values of a specific backed-up record. To do that, click the link in the **Map old fields to new fields** field, choose an object whose field values you want to overwrite, and map the necessary backed-up record fields to fields in the target Salesforce organization. For an object or a field to be displayed in the list of available items, it must have a backup.

To export the list that contains all mapped fields as a single .CSV file, click **Export to CSV**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the file with the exported data to the default download folder on the local machine.

IMPORTANT

- For security reasons, mapping of encrypted fields is not supported.
- Overriding and mapping fields of the *Text (Encrypted)* type is not supported.

Blocking Automation Settings

Business logic and automated rules configured in Salesforce can block Veeam Backup for Salesforce restore operations or trigger undesirable side processes. You can choose either to manually deactivate Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers in Salesforce or to instruct the product to bypass all blocking automation while performing a restore operation. To do that, select one of the options in the **Turn off automation** section:

- Select the I will manually turn off all blocking automation option, if you are a Salesforce Administrator and want to deactivate Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers in Salesforce manually.
- Select the **Automatically turn off all automation** option to automatically update Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers so that they are bypassed while the product performs the restore operation without impacting the Salesforce functionality. When you choose this option for a restore job for the first time, updating blovking automation will take significant time to complete. However, as the updates will be kept in Salesforce, all further restore operations will run faster.
- Select the **Temporarily turn off all automation** option to automatically update Flows, Validation Rules, Workflow Rules, Lookup Filters, Process Builders and Apex Triggers so that they are bypassed while the product performs the current restore operation only without impacting the Salesforce functionality. All changes made by the product will be reverted after the restore operation is over. Note that updating blocking automation and reverting the changes may take significant time to complete.

Backup Res	store Browse								
Restore Fie	d Values restore-job-2								
Name	Additional Restore Options Customize how certain data or fields should be handled during restore.								
Organization	Data consistency								
Data	Choose If you want to overwrite or skip existing records in Salesforce. Applies to records selected at "Data" step.								
Fields	Records restore rule: Restore deleted records. Overwrite existing records. 🗸								
Options	Allow empty values in backup to replace current field values in Salesforce.								
Verification	Field values								
Summary	Override field values: 1 field will be overriden								
	Map old fields to new fields: 훌륭 Not specified								
	Turn off automation (workflows, flows, apex triggers and validation rules)								
	I will manually turn off all blocking automation								
	Automatically turn off all automation								
	Temporarily turn off all automation								
	Previous Next Cancel								

Step 7. Check Permissions

At the **Verification** step of the wizard, verify whether the user that is used to perform the restore operation is assigned the permissions required to restore the selected Salesforce object. To do that, click the **Not verified yet** link and wait for the check to complete. If any of the permissions are missing, you must grant them in the Salesforce console manually as described in Salesforce documentation.

To export the list that contains all fields of the records selected at step 4 as a single .CSV file, click **Download CSV File**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the file with the exported data to the default download folder on the local machine.



Step 8. Finish Working with Wizard

At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Finish**.

If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start restore automatically after you complete the wizard, select the **Start the job after clicking the Finish button** check box. Otherwise, the job draft will be created, and you will have to manually run the job as described in section **Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs**.

TIP

To view all objects added to the restore session, click the link in the **Object** field.

Backup Res	store Browse		Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸	English 🖌	Configuration
E Restore Fiel	d Values restore-job-10					
Name	Data					
Organization	Restore type: Object:	Fields Account (4)				
Data	Fields override					
Fields	Field Ownerld	Value 005658421fjdh152vk				
options	Fields mapping					
Verification Summary	Object Account	Field in backup BillingCity	Field in Salesforce ShippingCity			
	Options					
	Overwrite records: Restore empty values: Disable automation: Roll-back disable automation:	Yes Yes No No				
	Permanently deleted Auto-number fields w	objects are restored with differer ill get next sequential value.	it IDs.			
	Start the job after clicking t	ne Finish button				
		Pro	evious Finish Car	ncel		

Restoring Files

File restore jobs allow you to recover changed and deleted content and attachments.

IMPORTANT

- When you restore any of the previous content versions of an existing Salesforce document, Salesforce creates a new version of this Content Document.
- When you restore an attachment, Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates a new file with the same file name and new ID. If the source file still exists, the file content is be updated.
- Restore of the *MobileApplicationDetail* and *MailmergeTemplate* types of content is not supported in Veeam Backup for Salesforce.
- Restore of embedded images deleted from *ContentNote*, *FeedItem* and *FeedComment* types of objects is not supported.
- Restore of *FeedAttachment* types of objects can be performed only when restoring the related *FeedItem* object hierarchy. Note that *ContentVersion* types of objects can be restored only if they were added as attachments (not embedded images) to *FeedItem* types of objects.
- To be able to restore an attachment of an email message, the user whose credentials are used to authorize the connection to Salesforce must be assigned the *Update Email Messages* permission. For more information, see Required Permissions.

To create a file restore job, perform the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Restore Files wizard.
- 2. Specify a name and description for the restore job.
- 3. Select Salesforce organizations.
- 4. Select files and attachments to restore.
- 5. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Launch Restore Files Wizard

To launch the **Restore Files** wizard:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to restore belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the **Restore Files** wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click **New Restore > Files**.

Backup Re	estore B	rowse Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸 🛛 🤇	Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	(L) 🗘 Cor	figuration
Organization: Veeam RN	D1 - ac (sandbo)	Filter b	y restore job name	Q She	w: All 🔮 🛓 😫) (b) (c) (T)	Filter (None)		
📤 New Restore 👻	nterit Draft 🖉	🗍 Clone 🛛 🗙 Delete Dr	aft 🕨 Run 🔳	Stop 🧃 👔 View De	tails 🛛 🛃 Settings 🗸				
Records Fields	Туре	Status ↓	Created Date	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By	000
Files	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 7:50:49	9/17/24, 7:50:58	9/17/24, 7:51:07	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-1	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:38:37	9/17/24, 12:38:55	9/17/24, 12:39:04	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-2	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:39:39	9/17/24, 12:40:21	9/17/24, 12:40:29	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:43:58	9/17/24, 1:44:00	9/17/24, 1:44:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-3	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:40:41	9/17/24, 1:11:09	9/17/24, 1:11:18	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:41:39	9/17/24, 1:42:02	9/17/24, 1:42:14	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-4	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:25:43	9/17/24, 1:26:04	9/17/24, 1:26:11	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-10	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:06:35	9/17/24, 2:06:45	9/17/24, 2:06:52	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-9	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:55:13	9/17/24, 1:56:07	9/17/24, 1:56:15	admin	admin	admin	
restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:11:24	9/17/24, 2:12:06	9/17/24, 2:12:26	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-26	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 4:44:48	9/17/24, 4:44:50	9/17/24, 4:45:17	admin	admin	admin	
#1 - restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:15:44	9/17/24, 2:15:46	9/17/24, 2:15:53	admin	admin	admin	

Step 2. Specify Restore Job Info

At the **Name** step of the wizard, use the **Job name** and **Job details or reason for restore** fields to specify a name for the new restore job and to provide a description for future reference. The maximum length of the job name is 100 characters.

Backup Re	store Browse Archive 🖼 Veeam RND1 🗸 🏝 Administrator 🗸 🖨 English 🗸 💭
Restore File	25 restore-job-4
Name	Restore Job Name
Organization	This information will be included in the audit log of the restore. It may be helpful to reference the incoming ticket or work item.
Data	Restore Files
Summary	Job details or reason for restore:
	Restoring object mes
	Cancel

Step 3. Select Organization

At the **Organization** step of the wizard, use the **Restore from** drop-down list to select a Salesforce organization whose files and attachments you want to restore. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list, it must belong to the company specified at step 1.

By default, files and attachments are restored to the same Salesforce organization. However, you can choose to restore files and attachments to another organization — to do that, use the **Restore to** drop-down list. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1 and be compatible with the organization whose files and attachments you want to restore. This means that you can restore from a production or sandbox organization only to its sandbox copies.

IMPORTANT

If you choose to restore an encrypted file to a production organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will decrypt the file and fully restore its content. However, if you choose to restore an encrypted file to a sandbox organization, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not decrypt the file for security reasons and therefore will create only an empty copy of this file.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive 🐘 Veeam RND1 🗸 🛦 Administrator 🗸 🌐 English 🗸 💭
← Restore File	S Restore Files
Name	Select Salesforce Organizations
Organization	Restore data to the same Salesforce organization or to another sandbox.
Data	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
Summary	Restore to:
	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
	Previous Next In Cancel

Step 4. Select Files to Restore

At the **Data** step of the wizard, choose files that you want to restore:

1. Select a file type to search for all files of this type that belong to the organization selected at step 3. For a file type to be displayed in the list of available types, at least one file of this type must have a backup.

When selecting a file type, consider the following:

- If you select the *Attachment* or *ContentVersion* file type, you will be able to narrow down the search scope by specifying a Salesforce object that is associated with files of this type.
- If you select the *ContentVersion* file type, you will be able to choose the version of each file that will be restored to do that, click the link in the **Version** column and select the necessary file version from the **Restore point** drop-down list.

To help you choose a version, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays both the content of the selected backed-up file and the content of the file currently stored in Salesforce. If you want to view only those fields that have changed since the backup was created, set the **Compare changes** toggle to *On*.

2. Click Search and select check boxes next to the necessary files.

By default, you can select up to 500,000 of files for one restore session. To change this limit, modify the ui.restore.max.selected.records parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

NOTE

If you select the *Document* file type and choose a document whose folder no longer exists in Salesforce, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically restore this folder when restoring the document.

Configuring Filtering Settings

Consider that Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the maximum number of 500 files per page. If you want to apply specific search conditions and reduce the number of search results, or if you want to select specific Salesforce fields to be displayed in the search results, click **Customize** in the **Filters and display fields** field.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. Keep in mind that the time required to process a request depends on the operator you use — for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.

NOTE

The **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with*, *ends with*, *equals*, *in*, *not equal to*, *not in*.

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, a file is displayed in the search results only if all the specified conditions are met. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND (2 OR 3) AND NOT 4*.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive	Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸	🕀 English 🗸	Configuration
External Restore File	S Restore Files				
Name Organization Data Summary	Search and select files to restore Use filters to find files and select file versio Search in: Attachment Search Stop search	Data Filters and Display Fields Specify any filters to narrow down your search. Customize Data Filters Display Fields	×		
	Records Search on this page Attachment ID Please specify search parameters and clu	Available (52) Selected: 1 of 52 Account.AccountSource (Account Source) Account.BillingCity (Billing City) Account.BillingCity (Billing Country) Account.BillingCountry (Billing Country) Account.BillingCountry (Billing Geoco Account.BillingLatitude (Billing Longitude) Account.BillingLongitude (Billing Izip/Postal Co Account.BillingState (Billing State/Province) Account.BillingStreet (Billing Street) Account.CreatedByld (Created By ID) Account.Description (Account Description)	Remove Add > Select Add > Select < Remove	tted (2) ected: 0 of 2 me (File Name) atedDate (Created Date)	
		Search Cancel			

TIP

You can download up to 10 files to the local machine. To do that, select the necessary files and click **Download**. Note that if the selected files are encrypted, only users assigned the *Administrator* and *Backup Operator* roles will be able to download these files.

Step 5. Finish Working with Wizard

At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Finish**.

If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start restore automatically after you complete the wizard, select the **Start the job after clicking the Finish button** check box. Otherwise, the job draft will be created, and you will have to manually run the job as described in section **Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs**.

TIP

To view all objects added to the restore session, click the link in the **Object** field.

Backup R	estore Browse		(P)RND V	Administrator 🗸	sh 🖌 💭 🏻	Configuration
E Restore Fi	les restore-job-159064					
Name Organization	Job ld: Job name: Job details:	159064 restore-job-159064 restoring files				
Dete	Connection					
Summary	Source: Source database: Target:	(P)RND - preprod (sandbox) preprod (P)RND - preprod (sandbox)				
	Data					
	Restore type: Object:	Files Total Objects: 2				
	Files					
	Attachment:	2				
	Permane Auto-num	ntly deleted objects are restored with different IDs. nber fields will get next sequential value.				
	Start the job af	ter clicking the Finish button				
		Previous	Finish C	ancel		
Restoring Metadata

Metadata restore jobs allow you to recover metadata of deleted objects as well as to restore metadata to another organization so that metadata of the object you want to restore matches metadata of the object in the target organization. For example:

- If you want to restore the connected app configuration, restore the *ConnectedApp* metadata file first. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If you want to restore the session settings, restore the *ProfileSessionSetting* metadata file first. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.
- If you want to restore the password policies, restore the *ProfilePasswordPolicy* metadata file first. For more information, see Salesforce Documentation.
- Reports and dashboards are also types of metadata that can be restored using this type of restore job.

IMPORTANT

After you restore the metadata of a deleted Salesforce object, you must perform backup of this object before you start a record restore operation. The backup is required for the object to be displayed at step 4 of the **Restore Records** wizard.

To create a metadata restore job, perform the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Restore Metadata wizard.
- 2. Specify a name and description for the restore job.
- 3. Select Salesforce organizations.
- 4. Select objects whose metadata will be restored.
- 5. Review the restore list.
- 6. Finish working with the wizard.

Step 1. Launch Restore Metadata Wizard

To launch the **Restore Metadata** wizard:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to restore belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the **Restore Metadata** wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click **New Restore > Metadata**.

Backup Re	estore Browse	Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸 🛛 🤇	💄 Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	(D) Configuration
Organization: Veeam RN	ID1 - ac (sandbox)	✓ Filter	by restore job name	Q Sho	w: All 😋 🔺 🔇	•	Filter (None)	
📤 New Restore 🐱	🎤 Edit Draft 🛛 🗍 C	ione 🗙 Delete D	raft 🕨 Run	Stop 🧵 View Det	ails 🛛 🔀 Settings 🗸			
Records Fields	Туре	Status ↓	Created Date	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By 🚥
Files								
Metadata http://www.bb-32	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 7:50:49	9/17/24, 7:50:58	9/17/24, 7:51:07	admin	admin	admin
restore b-1	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:38:37	9/17/24, 12:38:55	9/17/24, 12:39:04	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-2	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:39:39	9/17/24, 12:40:21	9/17/24, 12:40:29	admin	admin	admin
#1 - restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:43:58	9/17/24, 1:44:00	9/17/24, 1:44:11	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-3	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 12:40:41	9/17/24, 1:11:09	9/17/24, 1:11:18	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-7	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:41:39	9/17/24, 1:42:02	9/17/24, 1:42:14	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-4	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:25:43	9/17/24, 1:26:04	9/17/24, 1:26:11	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-10	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:06:35	9/17/24, 2:06:45	9/17/24, 2:06:52	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-9	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 1:55:13	9/17/24, 1:56:07	9/17/24, 1:56:15	admin	admin	admin
restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:11:24	9/17/24, 2:12:06	9/17/24, 2:12:26	admin	admin	admin
#1 - restore-job-26	Metadata	Success	9/17/24, 4:44:48	9/17/24, 4:44:50	9/17/24, 4:45:17	admin	admin	admin
#1 - restore-job-11	Files	Success	9/17/24, 2:15:44	9/17/24, 2:15:46	9/17/24, 2:15:53	admin	admin	admin

Step 2. Specify Restore Job Info

At the **Name** step of the wizard, use the **Job name** and **Job details or reason for restore** fields to specify a name for the new restore job and to provide a description for future reference. The maximum length of the job name is 100 characters.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive (B) Veeam RND1 v Administrator v (D) (C) Configuration
Extore Me	tadata restore-job-6
Name	Restore Job Name
Organization	This information will be included in the audit log of the restore. It may be helpful to reference the incoming ticket or work item.
Data	Metadata
Restore List	Job details or reason for restore:
Summary	kestoring object metadata
	Next Cancel

Step 3. Select Organization

At the **Organization** step of the wizard, use the **Restore from** drop-down list to select a Salesforce organization whose metadata you want to restore. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list, it must belong to the company specified at step 1.

By default, metadata is restored to the same Salesforce organization. However, you can choose to restore metadata to another organization — to do that, use the **Restore to** drop-down list. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1 and be compatible with the organization whose metadata you want to restore. This means that you can restore from a production or sandbox organization only to its sandbox copies.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive 🐘 Veeam RND1 🗸 🏝 Administrator 🗸 💮 English 🗸 💭 🐼 Configuration
E Restore Me	tadata Metadata
Name	Select Salesforce Organizations
Organization	Restore data to the same Salesforce organization or to another sandbox.
Data	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
Restore List	Restore to:
Summary	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)
	Previous Next In Cancel

Step 4. Select Metadata to Restore

At the **Data** step of the wizard, choose metadata files that you want to restore:

- Select a metadata type to search for all metadata files of this type that belong to the organization selected at step 3. For a metadata type to be displayed in the list of available types, at least one file of this type must have a backup.
- 2. Click **Search** and select check boxes next to the necessary metadata files. You can also choose the version of each file to do that, click the link in the **Version** column and select the necessary file version from the **Restore point** drop-down list.

TIP

To help you choose a version, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays both the content of the selected backed-up file and the content of the file currently stored in Salesforce. If you want to view only those fields that have changed since the backup was created, set the **Compare changes** toggle to *On*.

By default, you can select up to 500,000 of metadata files for one restore session. To change this limit, modify the ui.restore.max.selected.records parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

IMPORTANT

- If you want to restore a metadata file that no longer exists in Salesforce, you must choose a file version created while the file was not deleted from Salesforce.
- If you want to restore metadata of a custom object that was deleted from Salesforce permanently, you must restore the following types of metadata first: *CustomObject, CustomTab, Layout* and *Profile*. Note that when restoring metadata of the *Profile* type, you must choose all profiles that have access to the custom object.
- If you delete a metadata field from Salesforce and then create a new field using the same API name, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will treat this field as a new item when restoring metadata and will not populate it with the values of the deleted field. If you want the restored field to have the same values as the deleted one, you must create a mapping rule for these fields as described in section Restoring Field Values.

Configuring Filtering Settings

Consider that Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the maximum number of 500 metadata files per page. If you want to apply specific search conditions and reduce the number of search results, click **Customize** in the **Filters** field.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains*, *equals*, *starts with*, *is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. Keep in mind that the time required to process a request depends on the operator you use — for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.

NOTE

The **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with*, *ends with*, *equals*, *in*, *not equal to*, *not in*.

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, a record is displayed in the search results only if all the specified conditions are met. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND (2 OR 3) AND NOT 4*.

Backup Res	store Browse Ar	chive		Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸	English 🖌	0 Configuratio	'n
Restore Me	tadata Metadata							
Name Organization	Select Metadata To Res Use filters to find metadata	ecords and add to resto	re list.					
Data	All metadata type:	nponents 🗸	Fliters:					
Restore List	Search Stop sea	ch						
Summary	911 objects found Sea	rch on this page	Q 👱 Do	ownload				
	Туре	Version	API Name	Name	Last Modified D	Created Date	Deleted Date	
	Selected: 2 of 911					Show on	y Restore list (2) 💽 Off	f
	Vorkflow	Latest	TestBackupResto	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	•
	✓ ↓ TopicsForObj	Latest	zqoihqzc_c	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	
	TopicsForObj	Latest	xkffmkke_c	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	
	TopicsForObj	Latest	WorkOrderLinelt	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	
	TopicsForObj	Latest	WorkOrder	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	
	TopicsForObj	Latest	usjrznqxc	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null	
	P TaniceForchi	Latort	umualeha e	mull	6/2/24 2:50:20 DM	612124 2:50:20 DM	aull N	1
				Page 1 of 2	→ →I			

TIP

You can download up to 100 metadata files to the local machine. To do that, select the necessary records and click **Download**.

Step 5. Review Restore List

At the **Restore List** step, review the list of items that you want to restore and proceed with the wizard.

TIP

You can download up to 100 metadata files to the local machine. To do that, select the necessary objects and click **Download**.

Backup Res	store Browse Ar	chive		′eeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸 🤇	English 🖌)			
Extore Me	tadata Metadata									
Name	Restore list (2 items)	be restored								
Organization Search on this page Q X Remove Download										
Data	🗸 Туре	Version	API Name	Name	Last Modified D	Created Date	Deleted Date			
Restore List	Selected: 2 of 2									
Summary	Vorkflow	Latest	TestBackupRestor	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null			
	✓ 📮 TopicsForObj	Latest	zqoihqzcc	null	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	6/3/24, 2:59:38 PM	null			
			Previous	Next L	ancel					

Step 6. Finish Working with Wizard

At the Summary step of the wizard, review configured settings and click Finish.

If you want Veeam Backup for Salesforce to start restore automatically after you complete the wizard, select the **Start the job after clicking the Finish button** check box. Otherwise, the job draft will be created, and you will have to manually run the job as described in section **Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs**.

TIP

To view all objects added to the restore session, click the link in the **Object** field.

As soon as you start the restore job, you can see the status of the job both in the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Web UI and in Salesforce. Consider that if you have any other running deploy sessions in Salesforce, the restore job may fail with an error indicating that another deploy is in progress. Wait until other sessions complete, and start the restore job again.

Backup Res	tore Browse	Archive	🔛 Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸	English 🖌	Configuration
Restore Met	tadata Metadata					
Name	Summary Restore job configur	ation is complete. You can browse bac	k to adjust the scope and parameters of	frestore.		
Organization	Summary					
Data Restore List	Job Id: Job name: Job details:	6 Metadata Restoring object metadata				
Summary	Connection					
	Source: Source database: Target:	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox) vbsf_backup Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)				
	Data					
	Restore type: Object:	Metadata 2				
	Permaner Auto-num	ntly deleted objects are restored with d iber fields will get next sequential value	different IDs. e.			
	Start the job aft	er clicking the Finish button				
			Previous Finish Car	ncel		

Starting and Stopping Restore Jobs

You can start a restore job automatically right after you finish the restore job configuration wizard or manually on the **Restore** tab. Consider that after you start the restore job, it cannot be edited or removed anymore. You can only view the job details. However, you can clone this job after the job completes, and then edit it, for example, to create a new draft or to see the list of the restored objects. To learn how to clone and edit restore jobs, see Cloning and Editing Restore Jobs.

To start a restore job:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the restore job has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary job.

You can filter restore jobs displayed on the **Restore** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click Run.

Stopping Restore Jobs

You can stop a running restore job. However, it is not recommended that you do that, as it may result in data inconsistency. Consider that you cannot further edit, start or remove the stopped job.

ຝ	Backup	Restore	Browse Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸 🛛 🙎) Administrator 🗸	English 🗸	<u>()</u> () co	nfiguration
Org	anization: Veea	m RND1 - nd3 (sar	ndbox) 🗸	Filter by restore job name	۹	Show: All	<u>▲</u> ⊗	T Filter (None	2)	
1	New Restore 🐱	Clone	🧪 Edit Draft 🛛 🗙 De	elete Draft 🔰 <u>Run</u>	Stop	🚺 View Details 🛛 🛃 Se	ttings 🗸			
	Job Name	Туре	Status	Created Date	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By	000
Sele	cted: 1 of 2									
~	Restore records	Records	🖸 Draft	6/12/24, 2:40:4	-	-	admin	admin	-	
	Metadata	Metadata	🖸 Draft	6/12/24, 1:56:0	-	-	admin	admin	-	

Cloning Restore Jobs

You can clone a restore job if you want to launch it again or to create a new job based on the settings of the existing one.

IMPORTANT

You cannot clone a running restore job.

To clone a restore job:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the restore job has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary restore job.

You can filter restore jobs displayed on the **Restore** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

- 4. Click Clone.
- 5. In the **Clone Restore Job** window, specify a name for the new job, and click **Clone**.

After you clone the restore job, you can edit settings of the new draft.

Backup	Restore	Browse Archive	9) Veeam RND1 🗸 🛛 💄) Administrator 🗸	English 🗸		onfiguration
Organization: Veean	n RND1 - nd3 (san	ndbox) 🗸		۹	Show: All	▲ ③ ④	T Filter (Nor	ne)	
🏝 New Restore 🗸	Clone	🧪 Edit Draft 🛛 🗙 D	elete Draft 🛛 🕨 Run	Stop	🚺 View Details 🛛 🔀 Se	ttings 🗸			
Job Name	Туре	Status	Created Date ↓	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By	000
Selected: 1 of 2									
Restore records	Records	🖸 Draft	6/12/24, 2:40:4	-	-	admin	admin	_	
Metadata	Metadata	🔯 Draft	6/12/24, 1:56:0	-	-	admin	admin	-	
			Clone Restore Job			×			
			You may set custom n	ame for the clo	ned job.				
			New name: #1 - Resto	ore records					
					Clone Can	cel			

Editing Restore Jobs

For each restore job that has the *Draft* status, you can edit settings configured while creating the job:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the restore job has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary restore job.

You can filter restore jobs displayed on the **Restore** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click Edit Draft.

- 5. Complete the restore job wizard:
 - a. To provide a new name and description for the job, follow the instructions provided in sections Restoring Records (step 2), Restoring Field Values (step 2), Restoring Files (step 2) or Restoring Metadata (step 2).
 - b. To change the Salesforce organizations specified for the job, follow the instructions provided in sections Restoring Records (step 3), Restoring Field Values (step 3), Restoring Files (step 3) or Restoring Metadata (step 3).
 - c. [Applies only to record and field restore] To modify the list of records that you want to restore, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Records (step 4) or Restoring Field Values (step 4).
 - d. [Applies only to field restore] To modify the list of fields whose values you want to restore, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Field Values (step 5).
 - e. [Applies only to metadata restore] To modify the list of metadata objects that you want to restore, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Metadata (step 4).
 - f. [Applies only to metadata restore] To modify the list of metadata files that you want to restore, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Metadata (step 5).
 - g. [Applies only to record and file restore] To modify the list of files that you want to restore, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Records (step 5) or Restoring Files (step 4).
 - h. [Applies only to record restore] To change the hierarchy restore settings configured for the job, follow the instructions provided in section Restoring Records (step 6).
 - i. [Applies only to record and field restore] To change the additional restore options configured for the job, follow the instructions provided in sections Restoring Records (step 7) or Restoring Field Values (step 6).
 - j. [Applies only to record and field restore] To verify the permissions required for the restore job, follow the instructions provided in sections Restoring Records (step 8) or Restoring Field Values (step 7).
 - k. At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configuration information and click **Finish** to confirm the changes.

Backup	Restore	Browse Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸) Administrator 🗸	English v		figuration
Organization: Veeam F	RND1 - nd3 (sar	ndbox) 🗸 Fil	ter by restore job name	۹	Show: All 🛇	▲ ② ④ ☑	T Filter (None))	
🏝 New Restore 🗸	Clone	💉 Edit Draft 🛛 🗙 Delet	e Draft 🕨 🕨 Run	Stop	View Details 🛛 🕺 Set	ttings 🗸			
Job Name	Туре	Status	Created Date ↓	Start Date	Finish Date	Created By	Modified By	Started By	000
Selected: 1 of 3									
#1 - Restore rec	Records	🖸 Draft	6/12/24, 2:51:5	_	—	admin	admin	-	
Restore records	Records	🖸 Draft	6/12/24, 2:40:4	_	_	admin	admin	_	
✓ Metadata	Metadata	O Draft	6/12/24, 1:56:0	-	-	admin	admin	-	

Removing Restore Job Drafts

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove a draft of a restore job from the configuration database if you no longer need it. However, you cannot remove restore jobs that have already been launched.

To remove a restore job draft:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the restore job has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary restore job with the *Draft* status.

You can filter restore jobs displayed on the **Restore** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

- 4. Click Delete Draft.
- 5. In the Confirmation window, click Remove to acknowledge the operation.



Configuring Restore Mapping Settings

You can delete object mapping rules automatically created by the product and add alternate keys to use these keys instead of record IDs. Veeam Backup for Salesforce applies configured mapping settings to all restore jobs launched for this organization. For more information, see How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore.

Object Mapping by Record IDs

When restoring a record that was deleted from Salesforce, Veeam Backup for Salesforce creates a new record in Salesforce, assigns a new ID to this record and populates its fields with the values of the record from the backup. To associate the newly created record with the backed-up record, the product creates a default rule that maps the ID of the backed-up record with the ID of the record created in Salesforce.

You can delete a mapping rule if you no longer need it. To do that:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which you want to delete a rule.
- 3. Click Settings > Object IDs Mapping.
- 4. In the Restore Setting: Object IDs Mapping window, do the following:
 - a. Specify the ID of the record saved in the backup, the ID of the existing Salesforce record or both, and click **Find Existing Mapping**.
 - b. Click Remove.
 - c. Click **Save** to confirm that you want to remove the mapping rule.

TIP

To export the list that contains all mapping rules created for the restored records, click **Export to CSV**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will export all the mapping rules to a single .CSV file and download it to your local machine.

Mapping by Alternate Keys

When restoring a Salesforce record, Veeam Backup for Salesforce checks whether the record already exists in Salesforce. By default, the product uses the ID of the record saved in the backup to search for the record. However, you can add an alternate key and instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to use this key instead of the record ID, that is, define a record field with a unique value that will be used to identify the restored record in case the product fails to find it by the record ID. For example, you can create a mapping rule and instruct the product to use a phone number or an email field instead of the default record ID.

To add an alternate key, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Restore** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which you want to add the alternate key.
- 3. Click Settings > Alternate Keys.

- 4. In the **Restore Setting: Alternate Keys for Objects** window, do the following:
 - a. Choose an object for which you want to configure mapping.
 - b. Choose a field that will be used for mapping instead of the default record ID. The field value must be unique for the selected object.
 - c. Click Add Alternate Key.
 - d. To save the configured settings, click Save.

NOTE

Veeam Backup for Salesforce searches for alternate keys only if a record does not exist in Salesforce and no object mapping rules have been applied.

Backup	Restore	Browse Archive			Veeam RNE	01 🗸 🔹 Administrator 🗸	English 🗸		onfiguration
Organization: Veea	m RND1 - nd3 (sand	box) 🗸	lter by restore job name	٩	Show: Al	 ▲ 8 ● ▲ 	T Filter (None)		
🏝 New Restore 🗸	🥕 Edit Draft	🗇 Clone 🗙 Dele	te Draft 🕨 🕨 Run	Stop i	View Details	🛃 Settings 🗸			
Job Name 🕇	Туре	Status	Created Date	Start Date	Finish	EE Alternate Keys	Modified By	Started By	000
Selected: 1 of 2					l	and object tos wapping			
✓ restore-job-15	Records	Draft	12/10/24, 1:25:5	-	-	admin	admin	-	
restore-job-16	Fields	🖸 Draft	12/10/24, 1:26:2	-	-	admin	admin	_	

How Veeam Backup for Salesforce Applies Mapping During Restore

When restoring a record, Veeam Backup for Salesforce uses the following algorithm to search for the record in Salesforce and to compare it with the backed-up record:

- If the record exists in Salesforce, the product uses the ID of the record saved in the backup and updates the record using the backed-up data without applying any mapping rules.
- If the record exists in Salesforce but it is in the Salesforce Recycle Bin, the product uses the ID of the record saved in the backup and restores the record from the Recycle Bin without applying any mapping rules.
- If the record does not exist in Salesforce, the product does the following:
 - a. Checks whether the default object mapping rule can be applied. If yes, it restores the record using this mapping rule. If you have removed the rule manually, the product proceeds to step b.
 - b. Checks whether an alternate key can be applied. If yes, it restores the record using this key. If no alternate keys have been added, the product proceeds to step c.
 - c. Creates a new record in Salesforce with a new ID.

IMPORTANT

- If you specify override values for specific fields when restoring a record, the product applies these settings first and then uses the override values to search for alternate keys.
- If you apply a data masking template when restoring a record, the product first masks data and then uses the masked values to search for alternate keys.
- If you configure mapping by field when restoring a record, the product first applies an alternate key and then the configured field mapping rules.

Viewing Restore Job Details

Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays all restore jobs and restore job drafts on the **Restore** tab. After you run a restore job, it cannot be edited or removed anymore. Users can only view the job details and restore session statistics. Users assigned any role can see information on restore jobs created for Salesforce organizations to which data they have access.

You can filter restore jobs displayed on the **Restore** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

To view settings configured for a specific restore job:

- 1. Select the necessary restore job policy.
- 2. Click View Details.

The Restore Job Details window will open.

Backup Restore	Browse Archive		DEVs 🗸	Administrator 🗸	🕀 English 🖌		Configu	
	Restore Job Details					×		
Organization: DevOrg-General	Summary							
📤 New Restore 👻 🧪 Edit Draft	Job Id:	2851						
Job Name Type	Job name: Job details:					Started	Ву	000
Selected: 1 of 1	Connection							
Job Records	Source: Source database: Target:	General veeam General				-		
	Data							
	Restore type: Object:	Records Account (1)						
	Files							
	Restore attachments: Data filters:	Yes —						
	Hierarchy							
	Parent hierarchy levels: Child hierarchy levels: Excluded objects:	2 2 —						
					Close			

Viewing Restore Sessions

For each performed restore job, Veeam Backup for Salesforce starts a new session and stores its records in the configuration database. You can track real-time statistics of all running and completed operations on the **Restore** tab. To view the full list of tasks executed during an operation, click the link in the **Status** column. The restore session page will open.

On the restore session page, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays only Salesforce records that have been processed during the restore session. The records are grouped by every Salesforce batch, that is why one object may appear on the page multiple times. Consider that the results shown in the **Result** column are limited due to performance reasons. To see the full results, download the restore session logs – the logs will be collected and saved to the default download folder on the local machine in a single log.zip archive.

TIP

To export the list that contains records processed during the restore session as a single .CSV file, click **Export to CSV** and choose whether you want to export all records or records of a specific Salesforce object only. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will export all the details to a single .CSV file and download it to your local machine.

${\bf B}$	Backup	Restore	Browse	Archiv			🕅 v 2222 🗸	Adn	ninistrator 🗸	English	• (()	Configuration
\bigotimes	#1 - res	store-job-6	•									
Name: Type: Status:	#1 - restor Records Succe	re-job-6 ss			Start Date: Duration: API Usage:	9/17/24, 2:17:46 PM 9 sec 15			Created: Updated: Failed:	0 5 0		
	t		Q	Show: Al	⊘ 3	Stop			ah Ex	port to CSV 🗸	Download Log	gs C ^a Refresh
Object	t (Status	R	esult				Expo	ort All to CSV		Records 👓
Order			🔮 Undele	ted	_					t.		1
WorkO	rder		🕑 Update	d	_							1
WorkPl	lan		🕑 Update	ed .	-							1
WorkSt	tep		🕑 Update	d	_							2

Performing Salesforce Archiving

In the Veeam Backup for Salesforce *Advanced* license package, you can configure archival policies and instruct the product to delete obsolete or excessive data from Salesforce production organizations to consume less storage space in Salesforce and improve its performance. You can archive only records and files that have been backed up by the product; for the list of objects that cannot be archived, see Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.

When you instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to remove data while performing an archival operation, the archived data is removed from Salesforce – but remains in PostgreSQL databases and file repositories, and is marked as *Archived*.

NOTE

Only users assigned the *Administrator* or *Backup Operator* role can perform archival operations in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. However, these users can create and run archival policies within their permission scope only – that is, for companies and organizations whose data they can access.

Creating Archival Policies

To create an archival policy, complete the following steps:

- 1. Launch the Add Archival Policy wizard.
- 2. Specify a name and description for the archival policy.
- 3. Choose a Salesforce organization.
- 4. Choose data that will be archived.
- 5. Configure general archival settings.
- 6. Verify backup consistency.
- 7. Finish working with the wizard.

IMPORTANT

- Before you run an archival policy, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate Flows, Validation Rules and Apex Triggers in Salesforce since business logic and automated rules configured in Salesforce can block Veeam Backup for Salesforce archival operations and trigger undesirable side processes.
- By default, you cannot create multiple archival policies for one root Salesforce object or file type. To allow Veeam Backup for Salesforce to run multiple archival policies for one root object or file type, modify the archive.object.allow.parallel value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.

Step 1. Launch Add Archival Policy Wizard

To launch the **Add Archival Policy** wizard, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Archive** tab.
- 2. If you have added multiple companies to Veeam Backup for Salesforce, select a company to which the Salesforce organization whose data you want to be archived belongs. To do that, select the company from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

For a company to be displayed in the list of available companies, it must be added to Veeam Backup for Salesforce as described in section Adding Companies. Also, the user launching the Add Archival Policy wizard must be granted permissions to access the company as described in section User Roles and Permissions.

3. Click Create Archival Policy.

Backup	Restore Browse	Archive		Veeam Admin 🗸 🔹 A	dministrator 🗸 🔘 Englisi	h • (<u>(</u>))	Configuration
Organization: Veeam	RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)	Filter by police	y name	Q Show: All C	2 🛦 🔇 🕑 🗙		
+ Add Archival Policy	🖍 Edit 🛛 🗙 Delete	🕨 Run 🔳 Stop	🖒 Enable 🛛 🦹 View D	ietails			
Policy Name 1	Object	Status	Schedule	Last Run Date	Created Date	Created By	000
Selected: 0 of 1							
Test Archiving	Account	_	O Disabled	_	7/5/24, 12:05:13 PM	admin	

Step 2. Specify Archival Policy Info

At the **Name** step of the wizard, use the **Policy name** and **Description** fields to specify a name for the new archival policy and to provide a description for future reference. The maximum length of the policy name is 100 characters.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive	Veeam RND1 🗸 🔺 Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭	Configuration
Add Archiva	al Policy			
Name	Archival Policy Name			
Organization	Type in name and description for this archival policy. Policy name:			
Data	Account archive]	
Verify	Description: Archive unnecessary account records			
Options				
Summary				
		Next Cancel		

Step 3. Select Organization

At the **Organization** step of the wizard, select a Salesforce organization whose records you want to archive. For a Salesforce organization to be displayed in the list of available organizations, it must belong to the company specified at step 1 and have been backed up.

Backup Res	estore Browse Archive	m RND1 🗸 🔺 Administrator 🗸 🔴) English 🗸 💭
Add Archiva	/al Policy		
Name	Select Salesforce Organization		
Organization	Archival policy can only be configured for Salesforce organizations with completed Salesforce Organization: Veeam RND1 - pd3 (candbox)	ata and file backups.	
Data	Janesione of Banifations (Accan Indole - Indolean pool)		
Verify			
Options			
Summary			
	Previous Next	Cancel	

Step 4. Choose Data to Archive

At the **Data** step of the wizard, do the following:

1. Select a Salesforce object whose records you want to archive. Note that one archival policy can archive records of one root object only. If you want to archive records of multiple root objects, create an archival policy for each object.

For a Salesforce object to be displayed in the list of available root objects, it must have a backup. If the list does not contain the necessary object, the object either does not have a backup or cannot be archived. The object may not have a backup for the following reasons:

- The object was excluded from the backup policy that protects the Salesforce organization to which this object belongs.
- The Salesforce user whose permissions are used for backup operations does not have access to the object.
- Backup of the object is not supported in the current product version. For more information, see Appendix A. Unsupported Objects.
- 2. Select records that you want to archive. To do that, use filters in the **Records filter** section to apply specific search conditions.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce provides a number of built-in conditional operators (such as *contains, equals, starts with, is null* and so on) that can be used to send requests to databases. Note that the time required to process a request depends on the operator you use — for example, processing a request with the *equals* operator will take less time than processing a request with the *contains* operator.

TIP

When adding conditions, consider the following:

- If you want to search for records with null field values, use the *is null* operator. Using the *equals* operator in this case is not supported.
- If you want to search for a list of records, you can use the *in* operator and specify the IDs of the necessary records using a comma-separated list.
- If you want to search for a record but you do not have any information on this record except for the fact that it is linked to a specific object, you can use the lookup relationship field to filter all records linked to this object. To do that, specify the ID of the necessary object in the **Value** field.

Note that the **Value** field is case sensitive for the following operators: *starts with*, *ends with*, *equals*, *in*, *not equal to*, *not in*.

By default, filters are combined by the AND logical operator. That is, Veeam Backup for Salesforce archives only those records that meet all the specified conditions. You can change this behavior by combining filters using different operators. To do that, set the **Use filter logic** toggle to *On*, and specify the filter logic expression using condition ordinal numbers, brackets and logical operators – for example, *1 AND* (*2 OR 3*) *AND NOT 4*.

After you specify the filtering conditions, you can estimate the exact number of records that will be archived. To do that, click **Count** in the **Count sample size** section.

IMPORTANT

- If an object record that you want to archive contains encrypted fields, you will not be able to specify filters for these fields.
- Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not automatically archive the *ContentDocument* type of objects with the root object you must create a dedicated policy and choose to archive the *ContentDocument* object type. However, if you select the *QuoteDocument* type of objects, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will also archive the related *ContentDocument* objects.

Backup Res	store Browse Archive 🕀 Veeam RND1 🗸 🛦 Administrator 🗸 💮 English 🗸 💭 🐼 Configuration
Add Archiva	al Policy
Name	Data Filters
Organization	Select object: Contact (Contact)
Data	Records filter
Verify	Specify conditions to find records that should be archived. For example, "LastModifiedDate" older than "3 Years".
Options	Field: Operator: Value:
Summary	IsDeleted (Deleted) vequals vfalse X
	Accountid (Account ID) V contains V 00
	+ Add Condition
	Use filter logic: Off
	Count sample size
	Count records in the backup that match specified filters. This calculation does not count related records and files that might be archived as well.
	Count Stop
	4 records found in Contact
	Previous Next Cancel

Step 5. Configure General Settings

At the **Options** step of the wizard, you can select an archival schedule, specify API request and safety control limits and run the policy in the test mode.

Schedule Settings

In the **Schedule** section, choose whether you want to launch the policy every day, every week, every month or according to a custom schedule. For a custom schedule to be displayed in the list of available schedules, it must be created for the company selected at step 1 as described in section Creating Backup Policies.

Test Mode Settings

In the **Test mode** section, you can choose whether you want to run the archival policy in the test mode without actually deleting any data. To do that, select the **Run in test mode** check box — and then, either wait for the policy to run according to the selected schedule or run it manually after you finish working with the **Add Archival Policy** wizard. When the archival session completes, follow the instructions provided in section Viewing Archival Policy Sessions to view the number of records that will be archived for both the selected object and all its child objects.

Archive Limit Settings

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce archives up to 100,000 records during one archival session to avoid performance issues. In the **Safety controls** section, you can adjust this limit taking into account the number of records that has been calculated at step 4.

If the limit that you specify is less than the calculated number of records, the product will archive only the specified number of records while other records will be archived later, during subsequent archival sessions. Note that Veeam Backup for Salesforce can archive data during subsequent archival sessions only after running the related backup policy — this allows the product to preserve data consistency between backup sessions.

Hierarchy Depth Settings

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce deletes child records linked using restricted relationships (that is, required lookup field relationships and optional lookup field relationships with the **Delete this record also option** enabled) of the 1st and 2nd hierarchy levels only. In the **Safety controls** section, you can adjust the depth level.

NOTES

The hierarchy depth settings do not apply to master-detail relationships.

Consider the following example. You want an archival policy to delete child records in the root object 1 level deep down the hierarchy where records in the root object are linked to a child record using master-detail relationships. In this case, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will take the following steps while archiving records:

- 1. Delete the child record.
- 2. Proceed to deeper hierarchy levels until the 1st level child records linked using restricted relationships are detected.
- 3. Delete the detected 1st level child records with restricted relationships.

- 4. Proceed to deeper levels and keep deleting master-detail relationships until the 2nd level child records linked using restricted relationships are detected.
- 5. Keep the detected 2nd level child records and stop proceeding to deeper levels of the child hierarchy for this root record.
- 6. Try to finalize the archival operation. If deeper levels of child hierarchy contain records linked using restricted relationships, the operation will complete with an error and Veeam Backup for Salesforce will not be able to delete these child records.

API Request Limits

You can also specify thresholds for REST API and BULK API requests that must not be breached during archival operations since the total number of API requests that can be sent to Salesforce within 24 hours is limited for each Salesforce organization — this will help you ensure that Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not conflict with other applications that use API requests for integration with Salesforce. To do that, click **Set API limits** and enter the necessary threshold values (in percentage) in the **Set API limits** window.

NOTES

By design, Veeam Backup for Salesforce checks the number of remaining API requests every time it starts a new policy session:

- If any of the specified thresholds is breached, the session fails with an error indicating that the API request limit has been exceeded.
- If none of the specified thresholds is breached, Veeam Backup for Salesforce starts processing child objects added to the policy one by one.

Every time it processes a new child object, it checks the number of remaining API requests — if any of the specified thresholds is breached, the session fails with an error indicating that the API request limit has been exceeded, and all child objects that have not been processed yet remain undeleted. However, Veeam Backup for Salesforce continues sending requests to Salesforce to archive child objects whose processing started before the session failed. The latter may cause Veeam Backup for Salesforce to accidentally exceed the maximum limit of API requests that you specified.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive 🔚 Veeam RND1 🗸 🔕 Administrator 🗸 🖨 English 🗸 💭 🔅 Configuration
Add Archiva	l Policy
Name Organization Data	Options Select policy schedule and run options. Schedule Policy Schedule:
Options	Test mode
Summary	Running an archival policy in test mode allows to query Salesforce data without deleting it. This mode helps to verify which objects and how many records will actually be affected by the policy. Run in test mode Safety controls Define how many records can be archived per policy run. Archive records limit: 100000 Bypass restricted relationships and archive related child records down to the specified hierarchy depth. Hierarchy depth: 5 Image: Set API limits
	Previous Next In Cancel

Step 6. Verify Backup Consistency

At the **Verify** step of the wizard, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will check whether all child objects related to the root object selected at step 4 have backups. You must thoroughly review the list of these child objects and confirm whether they can be safely deleted from Salesforce. To do that, select the **Confirm permanent deletion** check box.

Note that Veeam Backup for Salesforce archives only those objects that are linked to the root object using master-detail relationships, required lookup field relationships, or optional lookup field relationships with the **Delete this record also** option enabled. For more information on object relationships, see <u>Salesforce documentation</u>.

TIP

If you want to keep any of the child objects, edit the data protection settings of the backup policy that protects the Salesforce organization to which the parent object belongs to include missing objects, run the policy to create an incremental backup – and then, modify the archival policy settings to check whether the necessary child objects now have backups.

You must also verify whether the user that is used to perform the archival operation is assigned the permissions required to archive the selected Salesforce object. To do that, click the **Not verified yet** link and wait for the check to complete. If any of the permissions are missing, you must grant them in the Salesforce console manually as described in Salesforce documentation.

Backup Re	store Browse Arch	live	(International Veeam RND1 🗸 🚺 Administrator 🗸	🕀 English 🖌	(D) Configuration
Add Archiv	al Policy				
Name	Verify and Confirm				
Organization	Archival policy will delete reco Salesforce may be permanent	rds from Salesforce. If any o ly deleted without ability to	f related child objects is missing from the backup, this data in restore.		
Data	Child Object	Relationship Field	Confirmation	_	
Verify	Announcement	FeedItemId	🛕 Data is not flagged as archived; can be restored		
	FeedAttachment	FeedEntityId	🛕 Delete without possibility to restore		
Options	FeedComment	FeedItemId	🛕 Data is not flagged as archived; can be restored		
Summary	FeedItem	Parentid	🛕 Delete without possibility to restore		
	NetworkModeration	EntityId	🛕 Data is not flagged as archived; can be restored		
	ServiceReport	Parentid	🛕 Delete without possibility to restore		
	Listed child objects have no ba	ickup or don't have parent o	bject included in backup. This may result in permanent deletion of		
	Confirm permanent delet	ion fl			
	• commission permanent delet				
	Verify permissions				
	Verify permissions before run	ning the archive policy. Lear	n more about verified permissions.		
	Verification completed. No	issues found.			
		Prev	rious Next Cancel		

Step 7. Finish Working with Wizard

At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configured settings and click **Finish**.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	🙀 Veeam RND1 🗸 🔒 Administrator 🗸 🖨 English 🗸 💭 🔅 Configuration							
Add Archiva	l Policy								
Name	Summary Archival policy configuration is comp	lete. You can browse back to adjust the scope and parameters of the policy.							
Organization	Summary								
Data Verify	Archival policy name: Description:	Account archive Archive unnecessary account records							
	Organization								
Options	Salesforce Organization:	Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)							
Summary	Data								
	Object:	Contact							
	Child Objects								
	Approved for permanent deletion:	42							
	Options								
	Schedule: Test mode: Archive records limit: Hierarchy depth: REST API usage limit: BULK API usage limit:	At 12:00 AM, only on Sunday (UTC+0:00) UTC No 100000 2 80 % 80 %							
		Previous Finish In Cancel							

Starting and Stopping Archival Policies

You can start an archival policy manually, for example, if you want to archive more records and do not want to modify the configured policy schedule. You can also stop a policy manually if processing is about to take too long, and you do not want the policy to have an impact on the production environment during business hours.

To start or stop an archival policy:

- 1. Navigate to the **Archive** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the archival policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary archival policy.

You can filter archival policies displayed on the **Archive** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click **Run** or **Stop**.

$\textcircled{\basis}$	Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive			Weearn RND1 🗸 🛛 🕹	Administrator 🗸 💮 English	• (1)	
Orga	anization: Veeam	RND1 - nd3	[sandbox]	•		name or organization	Q Show: All 🔮	▲ ③ ③ ×		
+ A	dd Archival Policy	🧪 Edit	X Delete	کر <u>Run</u> راس	Stop	🖒 Enable 🚫 Disable	i View Details			
✓	Policy Name		Object	0	Status	Schedule	Last Run Date	Created Date ↓	Created By	000
Sele	cted: 1 of 1									
✓	Test policy [Test n	node]	Account		Success	ሪ Weekly	6/15/24, 10:00:00 PM	6/4/24, 10:36:37 AM	admin	

Disabling and Enabling Archival Policies

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce runs all created archival policies according to the specified schedules. However, you can temporarily disable an archival policy so that Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not run the policy automatically. You will still be able to manually start or enable the disabled archival policy at any time you need.

To disable or enable an archival policy, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Archive** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the archival policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary archival policy.

You can filter archival policies displayed on the **Archive** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. Click **Disable** or **Enable**.

Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive		Veeam RND1	 Administrato 	or 🗸 🛞 English	• (1) (1	Configuration
Organization: Veea	am RND1 - nd3	(sandbox)	✓ Filter	by policy name or organizati	on Q Show:	All 🔮 🔺 🔕 🤅) ×		
+ Add Archival Polic	y 🥜 Edit	X Delete	🕨 Run 🔳	Stop 🖒 Enable 🤇	Disable i View Details				
✓ Policy Name		Object	Sta	us Schedule	Last Run I	Date Creat	ted Date ↓	Created By	000
Selected: 1 of 1									
Test policy [Test	t mode]	Account	0	Success 🖒 Weekly	y 6/15/24, 10	0:00:00 PM 6/4/2	4, 10:36:37 AM	admin	

Editing Archival Policies

You can edit archival policies created in Veeam Backup for Salesforce. For example, you may want to modify some settings for an archival policy, change the policy schedule and so on.

IMPORTANT

In case the list of backed-up objects has been changed (for example, new objects have been added to Salesforce or any objects have been excluded from the backup), you must edit all archival policies related to these objects.

To edit archival policy settings, do the following:

- 1. Navigate to the **Archive** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the archival policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary archival policy.

You can filter archival policies jobs displayed on the **Archive** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary job in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

- 4. Click Edit.
- 5. Complete the Edit Archival Policy wizard:
 - a. To change the name and description of the policy, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Archival Policies (step 2).
 - b. To modify the list of records that you want to archive, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Archival Policies (step 4).
 - c. To modify the configured archival schedule, adjust the archive limit, change the hierarchy depth settings, specify new API limits, or run the policy in the test mode, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Archival Policies (step 5)
 - d. To verify permissions and confirm permanent deletion of associated child objects, follow the instructions provided in section Creating Archival Policies (step 6).
 - e. At the **Summary** step of the wizard, review configuration information and click **Finish** to confirm the changes.

$\textcircled{\basis}$	Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrator 🗸 🔘 English	• •	Configuration
Org	anization: Veean	n RND1 - nd3 ((sandbox)	•		name or organization	Q Show: All 🥥	▲ ③ ④ ×		
+ ^	dd Archival Policy	<u>Edit</u> مر	🗙 Delete	🕨 Run	Stop	🖒 Enable 🛛 🛇 Disable	i View Details			
~	Policy Name	0	Object		Status	Schedule	Last Run Date	Created Date ↓	Created By	000
Sele	ected: 1 of 1									
✓	Test policy [Test	mode]	Account		Success	🖒 Weekly	6/15/24, 10:00:00 PM	6/4/24, 10:36:37 AM	admin	

Removing Archival Policy

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to permanently remove an archival policy from the configuration database if you no longer need it:

- 1. Navigate to the **Archive** tab.
- 2. From the organization drop-down list, select a Salesforce organization for which the archival policy has been created.
- 3. Select the necessary archival policy.

You can filter archival policies displayed on the **Archive** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

4. In the **Confirm Archival Policy Delete** window, click **Remove** to acknowledge the operation. The archived data and files will not be affected.

Backup Restore Browse Archiv	e 🔛 Vee	am RND1 🗸 🛛 🛓 Admin	istrator 🗸 🌐 English	✓ ① Configuration
Organization: Veeam RND1 - nd3 (sandbox)	Filter by policy name	Show: All 🥑 🖌		
🕂 Add Archival Policy 🧪 Edit 🗙 Delete 📔 🕨 Run	Stop O Disable i View Details			
✓ Policy Name ↑ Object	Status Schedule	Last Run Date	Created Date	Created By 000
Selected: 1 of 1				
Test Archiving [Test] Account	Success 😃 Weekly	7/5/24, 12:13:59 PM	7/5/24, 12:05:13 PM	admin
	Confirm Archival Policy Delete	×		
	Are you sure you want to delete archiv	val policy?		
	I	Remove Cancel		

Viewing Archival Policy Details

After you create archival policies, Veeam Backup for Salesforce displays the policies on the **Archive** tab. Users assigned any role can see information on archival policies created for Salesforce organizations to which data they have access.

You can filter archival policies displayed on the **Archive** tab by using the icons in the **Show** field at the top of the list. If you select a filter, the settings will apply to all companies and will not change during the current user session until the user changes it manually. That is why if you do not see the necessary policy in the list, make sure that the **All** filter is selected.

Each policy in the list is described with the following set of properties:

- **Policy Name** the name of the archival policy.
- **Object** the root object that will be archived by this policy.
- **Status** the status of the latest archival policy session.

To see all policy sessions, click the link in the **Status** column. For more information, see Viewing Archival Policy Sessions.

- Schedule the name or status of the schedule configured for the archival policy.
- Last Run Date the date and time when the latest archival policy session started.
- Created Date the date and time when the archival policy was created.
- Created By the name of a user that created the archival policy.

TIP

You can view settings configured for a specific archival policy. To do that, select the necessary archival policy and click **View Details**.

Backup Restore	Browse Archi	/e	Veeam Ri	ND1 🗸 🔹 Administr	ator 🗸 💮 English 🗸	(L) 🔅 Col	nfiguration
Organization: Veeam RND1 - nd3	(sandbox) 🗸	Filter by policy name	or organization	Show: All 📀	▲ ③ ④ ×		
🕂 Add Archival Policy 🛛 🧪 Edit	🗙 Delete 🕨 🕨 Run	Stop 🖒 E	inable 🛇 Disable	i <u>View Details</u>			
✓ Policy Name	Object	Status So	hedule	Last Run Date	Created Date ↓	Created By	000
Selected: 1 of 1							
✓ Test policy [Test mode]	Account	🕑 Success 🕑) Weekly	6/15/24, 10:00:00 PM	6/4/24, 10:36:37 AM	admin	

Viewing Archival Policy Sessions

For each performed archival operation, Veeam Backup for Salesforce starts a new session according to the created archival polices, and stores the session details in the product database. You can track real-time statistics of all running and completed operations on the **Archive** tab. To view the full list of tasks executed during an operation, click the link in the **Status** column.

The **Archival Sessions** section of the **Archive** tab displays information on all sessions of the archival policy. Each session is described with the following set of properties:

- Session ID the ID assigned to the session.
- **Test Run** the indication whether the policy was launched in the test mode.
- **Start Date** the date and time when the session started.
- Finish Date the date and time when the session ended.
- **Status** the current status of the session.
- **Result** the explanation why Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process the records (applies only to sessions with the *Warning* and *Error* statuses).
- **Processed Objects** the total number of objects processed during the session.
- API Usage the total number of API calls sent during the session.
- Archived Records the total number of Salesforce records archived during the session.
- Failed the total number of Salesforce records that Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process.

NOTE

You can restore records archived during a specific archival session. To do that, choose the necessary session in the **Archival Sessions** section, click **Start Restore** and complete the **Restore Records** wizard as described in section **Restoring Records**.

The **Session Details** section of the **Archive** tab displays information on all objects included in a specific policy session. Each object is described with the following set of properties:

- **Object / Event** the name of the archived object.
- **Parent Object** the name of a parent object to which the archived object is linked (if any).

Veeam Backup for Salesforce will display only those parent objects that are linked to the archived object using master-detail relationships.

- Start Time the date and time when Veeam Backup for Salesforce started a new task to process the object.
- **Status** the current status of the task.
- **Result** the explanation why Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process the records (applies only to tasks with the *Warning* and *Error* statuses).
- API Usage the total number of API calls sent during the task.
- Archived Records the total number of Salesforce records archived during the task.
- Failed the total number of Salesforce records that Veeam Backup for Salesforce failed to process.
TIPS

- If you want to view logs of a specific archival session, select the session and click **Download Logs**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will collect the session logs and save them as a single .ZIP archive to the default download folder on the local machine.
- If you want to view all archived records for a specific object, choose the necessary object in the **Session Details** section and click the link in the **Archived Records** column.

Backup	Restore	Browse	Archive		Veeam Admin 🗸	Administrator 🗸	English	• (1) (1	Configu	uration
E Test	Archiving Acc	ount								
Archival Sessio	Show:	All 🛇 🛦	8 © ×	Stop	🥻 View Details 💧 📤 Start	Restore	Export to CSV	Download Logs	C" Re	efresh
Session ID ↓	Test Run	Start Date	Finish Date	Status	Result	Processe	API Usage A	rchived	Failed	000
4	No	10/14/24,	10/14/24,	Success	-	3	95	3	0	
Session Detail:	S Object / Even	nt		Q show:	All 😋 🛦 😧 🕲 🗙	i View Details			(* Re	efresh
Object / Event	Parent Object	Start Tim	e↓ Statu	s Resu	lt	API Usa	age Archived R	eco	Failed	000
Contact	Account	10/14/24,	10:2 🥑 Si	uccess —			0	1	-	
Opportunity	Account	10/14/24,	10:2 🥑 Si	uccess —			0	1	_	
Account	-	10/14/24,	10:2 🥑 Si	uccess —			1	1	-	

Collecting Archived Data

You can export the list that contains all fields of the archived records as a single .CSV file. To do that, navigate to the **Archive** tab and click **Export to CSV**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the file with the exported data to the default download folder on the local machine.

NOTE

If an archival policy was launched in the test mode, its .CSV file will be empty.

Back	up Resto	re Browse	Archive			Veeam RND1 🗸	Administrato	r 🖌 🌘 En	glish 🖌 💭	Configuration	
🤆 Te	st policy Ad	count									
Archival Se	ssion Sear	ch		Q i View D	etails Show:	All 🛇 🛦 🔇	• • ×	Start Restore	انه <u>Export to CSV</u>		
Session ID ↑	Test Run	Start Date	Finish Date	Status	Result		Processed	API Usage	Archived R	Failed 👓	
1	Yes	6/4/24, 1:08	6/4/24, 1:08	Success	-		6	0	32	0	
2	Yes	6/8/24, 10:0	6/8/24, 10:0	Success	-		6	0	32	0	
3	Yes	6/15/24, 10:	6/15/24, 10:	Success	-		6	0	34	0	

Updating Veeam Backup for Salesforce

Veeam Backup for Salesforce allows you to check for new product versions and available package updates, download and install them right from the Web UI.

To view the product details:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to About.

The About section displays the currently installed version of Veeam Backup for Salesforce.

It is recommended that you timely install available updates to avoid performance issues while working with the product. For example, timely installed security updates may help you prevent potential security issues and reduce the risk of compromising sensitive data.

Upgrading Veeam Backup for Salesforce

You can upgrade from Veeam Backup for Salesforce 1.0, 2.0 and 3.0 to Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 using the Veeam updater service as described in section Installing Updates. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will automatically notify you about the newly released product version.

After you upgrade to Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1, consider the following:

- The domain name or IP address of the management server displayed on the **About > Advanced Settings** tab of the **Configuration** page must match the Callback URL specified in the Connected App settings. To change the domain name or IP address, modify the backend.domain parameter value. For more information on the advanced settings, see Configuring Advanced Settings.
- Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 supports API version 60.0, while Veeam Backup for Salesforce 2.0 supported API version 57.0. The API version is automatically updated upon the product upgrade. To see the supported API version, check the sf.api.version parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.
- If you have previously added a Salesforce Sandbox organization to Veeam Backup for Salesforce 1.0 but no backups have been created for this organization yet, you must delete this organization from Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.0 and add it again. Otherwise, the product will fail to reauthorize the connection to the organization.
- If you previously did not have the product installed, Veeam Backup for Salesforce 3.1 will store backed -up data in the /opt/vbsf/data folder. However, if you upgrade from version 1.0 to 3.1, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will store the data in the folder that has already been used in version 1.0 that is, the /opt/vbsf/vbsf-backup/data folder. If you want to change the folder after upgrading the product, modify the data.storage.location parameter value as described in section Configuring Advanced Settings.
- If you have a backup policy that has already been used to protect data of a Salesforce organization and this data to be archived, you must first run the backup policy and then archive this data as described in section Creating Archival Policies.

For more information on the issues that you may encounter while upgrading the product, see the Veeam Backup for Salesforce Release Notes.

Checking for Updates

Veeam Backup for Salesforce automatically notifies you about newly released product versions and package updates available for the operating system running on the Veeam Backup for Salesforce server. However, you can check for available updates manually if required:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to About.
- 3. In the Veeam Backup for Salesforce section, click Check for Updates.

If new updates are available, they will be displayed on the **Updates** tab of the **Veeam Updater** page. To view detailed information on an update, select the check box next to the update and click **What's new?**.

Backup Res	tore Browse Archive	Administrator 🗸	English 🖌 💭
Exit Configuration	About Advanced Settings		
Application	Veeam Backup for Salesforce		
Salesforce	Build version: develop.0.0.1095 Check for Updates		
Companies			
Security	Support		
Lerts	You can open a technical support case and attach logs using the wizard.		
License	坐 Download Logs 💦 🔒 Open Support Case		
🗙 About			

Installing Updates

Use the Veeam updater service to download and install new product versions and available package updates . You can also set a reminder to send update notifications

IMPORTANT

Veeam Backup for Salesforce does not allow you to schedule the update installation as it may cause interrupting of running activities, which may result in unpredictable data loss. It is recommended that you make sure that all backup policies are disabled and restore jobs are finished before you install a product update.

Installing Updates

To download and install available product and package updates:

- 1. Open the Veeam Updater page. To do that:
 - a. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
 - b. Navigate to About.
 - c. In the Veeam Backup for Salesforce section, click Check for Updates.
- 2. On the Veeam Updater page, do the following:
 - a. In the **Updates are available for this system** section, select check boxes next to the necessary updates.
 - b. In the **Choose action** section, select the **Install updates now** option, select the **Reboot automatically after install if required** check box to allow Veeam Backup for Salesforce to reboot the server if needed, and then click **Install Updates Now**.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce will download and install the updates; the results of the installation process will be displayed on the **History** tab. Keep in mind that it may take several minutes for the installation process to complete.

NOTE

When installing product updates, Veeam Backup for Salesforce restarts all services running on the management server, including the Web UI service. That is why Veeam Backup for Salesforce will log you out when the update process completes.

Setting Update Reminder

If you have not decided when to install updates, you can set an update reminder — instruct Veeam Backup for Salesforce to send an update notification later.

To do that, on the Veeam Updater page, in the Choose action section, do the following:

1. Select the **Remind me later** option and choose when you want to receive the reminder.

If you select the Next Week option, Veeam Backup for Salesforce will send the reminder in 7 days.

2. Click Remind me later.

💭 Veeam Updater			June 19, 2024 at 10:40 AM GMT+1	Configuration
Updates History				v. 9.0.0.1089
🛒 Updates are available for this system:		😫 Choose action:		
Last checked: 2 minutes ago 🛛 🗘 Check for Updates				
Select packages to install:	What's new?	1 packages selected		
✓ ✓ VBSF repository		O Install updates now		
Veeam Backup for Salesforce (3.0.0-1212.el8) 226 M		O Schedule updates installation		
		Remind me later		
		Next Week 🗸		
		Remind me later		

Viewing Updates History

To see the results of the update installation performed on the management server, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to About.
- 3. In the **Product updates** section, click **Check for Updates**.
- 4. On the **Veeam Updater** page, switch to the **History** tab.

For each date when an update was installed, **Veeam Updater** will display the name of the update and its status (whether the installation process completed successfully, completed with warnings or failed to complete).

To download logs for the installed updates, select the necessary date in the **Date** section, and click **View Full Log**. Veeam Backup for Salesforce will save the logs as a single file to the default download directory on the local machine.

${rac{ {\cal S}}{{\cal S}}}$ Veeam Updater		September 19, 2024 at 03:56 PM GMT+4
Updates History		v. 7.0.0.810
Update sessions history	View Full Log	
Date †	Package	Status
September 19, 2024 at 12:41 PM	Preparing for the update operation	Success
	Veeam Backup for Salesforce (3.0.0-3955.el7)	Success
	Update operation has been completed	Success

Getting Technical Support

If you have any questions or issues with Veeam Backup for Salesforce, you can search for a resolution on Veeam R&D Forums or submit a support case in the Veeam Customer Support Portal.

When you submit a support case, it is recommended that you provide the Veeam Customer Support Team with the following information:

- Version information for the product and its infrastructure components
- The error message or an accurate description of the problem you are facing
- Log files

Opening Support Case

To open a support case:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to About.
- 3. In the Support section, click Open Support Case.

NOTE

It is recommended that you open only support cases related to the Veeam Backup for Salesforce specific issues from the Web UI. For general and license issues, use the Veeam Customer Support Portal.



Downloading Product Logs

To download the product logs, do the following:

- 1. Switch to the **Configuration** page.
- 2. Navigate to About.
- 3. In the **Support** section, click **Download Logs**.

- 4. In the **Download Logs** window, specify a time interval for which logs must be collected:
 - Select the Collect logs for the last option if you want to collect data for a specific number of days in the past.
 - Select the Collect logs for the specified time period option if you want to collect data for a specific period of time in the past.

4. Click Download.

Veeam Backup for Salesforce will collect logs for the specified time interval and save them to the default download folder on the local machine in a single log.zip archive.

NOTE

Product logs are available only to users with the *Administrator* role assigned. However, all users can download backup or restore session logs. To learn how to download these logs, see sections Viewing Policy Sessions and Viewing Restore Sessions.



Appendices

See in this section:

- Appendix A. Unsupported Objects
- Appendix B. Replacing Security Certificate

Appendix A. Unsupported Objects

Veeam Backup for Salesforce supports backup of objects available in API version 60 and earlier. However, most of the objects that cannot be restored are not collected. You can tell these objects in Salesforce by the following flags assigned: *creatable = false, updatable = false*. The only exception is that backup of the ***History** objects is supported. For more information on backup and restore limitations, see Considerations and Limitations.

By default, Veeam Backup for Salesforce can archive all objects and file types that can be restored. For the list of objects that cannot be archived, see the following table:

Operation	Unsupported Objects
Backup	 *_b, *_ViewStat, *_VoteStat, *_x, *_hd, *_ChangeEvent, *_VersionHistory, *Event, *EventStream, *Feed, AccountUserTerritory2View, ActivityMetric, ActivityMetricRollup, AggregateResult, AnalyticsBotSession, AnlytDataAssetEventStore, ApexEmailNotification, ApexPageInfo, ApexTestQueueItem, ApexTestResult, ApexTestResultLimits, ApexTestRunResult, ApexTestSuite, AppTabMember, AuraDefinitionInfo, BackgroundOperationResult, BotAnalytics, BotEventLog, BulkApiResultEventStore, CleanDataService, CollaborationGroupRecord, ColorDefinition, ContentFolderItem, ContentFolderMember, ContentHubItem, DataCloudAddress, DataCloudCompany, DataCloudContact, DataCloudDandBCompany, DataCloudSocialHandle, DataStatistics, DataType, DcSocialProfile, DcSocialProfileHandle, DecisionTableRecordset, EmbeddedServiceLabel, EngagementHistory, EntityDefinition, EntityParticle, FieldDefinition, FieldHistoryArchive, FlexQueueItem, FlowDefinitionView, FlowVariableView, FlowVersionView, IconDefinition, Idea, IdeaComment, IdeaReputation, IdeaReputationLevel, IdeaTheme, InstalledPackage, InterfaceFieldMapping, ListViewChartInstance, ManagedCintentType, NetworkUserHistoryRecent, OauthToken, OmniRoutingEventStore, OutgoingEmail, OutgoingEmailRelation, RecordVisibility, Regular_articles_kav, RelationshipDomain, RelationshipInfo, SalesStore, SearchLayout, SiteDetail, SubscriberPackage, TenantUsageEntitlement, UserAppMenuItem, UserEmailCalendarSync, UserEntityAccess, UserFieldAccess, UserProfileFeed, UserRecordAccess, Vote Note: Since Salesforce does not provide API to export and restore Session Settings of a Salesforce profile, as well as Object Permissions of the AiMetadata Sync Status, Archive Job Session, Rebate Payout Snapshot, User External Credential and Web Cart Document objects, backup of this type of data is not supported.
Restore	AccountPartner, ContentFolder, DigitalSignature, OpportunityPartner
Archive	*History, *Share, *Tag, AccountPartner, ContentNote, ContentFolder, MailmergeTemplate, MobileApplicationDetail, OpportunityPartner, Organization, Profile, RecordType, SelfServiceUser, User, standard Salesforce objects that cannot be deleted through API.

Appendix B. Replacing Security Certificate

When you install Veeam Backup for Salesforce, it automatically generates a default self-signed certificate. You can replace this default certificate with your own self-signed certificate or with a certificate obtained from a Certificate Authority (CA).

The /etc/nginx/certs default SSL configuration file contains paths to the following certificate files:

- ssl_certificate "/opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/vbsf.crt" a file that contains the self-signed
 certificate.
- ssl_certificate_key "/opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/vbsf.key" a file that contains a private key used to generate the certificate.
- ssl_password_file "/opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/passout" a file that contains a password to decrypt the private key. This file is not required if the private key is not encrypted.

Installing SSL Certificate on Nginx Server

To replace the default certificate, do the following:

- 1. Log in to the machine where Veeam Backup for Salesforce is installed.
- 2. Upload new SSL certificate files to the /opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/ folder.
- 3. Set the vbsf user as the owner of the new files and add these files to the vbsf group. To do that, run the command:

sudo chown vbsf:vbsf /opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/*

4. Update the configuration parameters in the /etc/nginx/certs configuration file specifying the paths to the new certificate files:

```
ssl_certificate "<path_to_the_new_file>";
ssl_certificate_key "<path_to_the_new_file>";
ssl_password_file "<path_to_the_new_file>";
```

If the private key is not encrypted, remove the password line from the /opt/vbsf/nginx/certificate/passout file.

5. Restart the nginx service. To do that, run the command:

```
sudo systemctl restart nginx
```

To learn how to create and configure your own certificate, see documentation of the relevant SSL providers (for example, Digicert documentation).